Introduction

Thank you for purchasing the SoftBank 708SC.

- Read this guide thoroughly before using 708SC to ensure proper usage.
- After reading this guide, keep it for later reference.
- Should you lose or damage this guide, contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).
- Accessible services may be limited by contract conditions or service area.

708SC is compatible with both 3G and GSM network technologies.

Note

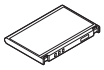
- Unauthorized copying of any part of this guide is prohibited.
- Contents are subject to change without prior notice.
- Not all functions and services described in this user guide are available in Japan.
- Steps have been taken to ensure the accuracy of descriptions in this guide. If you find inaccurate or missing information, contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).
- If there are any missing/misplaced pages in this manual, SoftBank will replace it.

Accessories

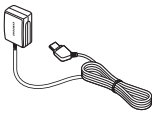
Make sure the following accessories are included in the package with handset. These accessories are also sold separately.

For details on accessories or optional items, contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).

Battery



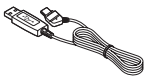
AC Charger



Utility Software (CD-ROM)

Stereo Earphone Microphone

USB Cable



Microphone Cable

Contents

Accessories i
Contents ii
About This Guide. xiii
Safety Precautions xv
General Notes. xxviii
SAR Certification Information. xxxv

1 Getting Started

USIM Card. 1-2
General Information & Precautions 1-2
Inserting & Removing USIM Card 1-3
USIM PINs. 1-5
Handset Parts & Functions. 1-6
Handset. 1-6
Display Indicators 1-8
Sub Display 1-10
Battery & Charger. 1-10
Before Using Battery or Charger 1-10
Inserting & Removing Battery 1-12
AC Charger 1-14
In-Car Charger (Optional) 1-16
Power On/Off. 1-17
Power On 1-17
Power Off 1-18
Time & Date 1-18
Time & Date 1-18
Time Zone Updating 1-19
Changing Home Time Zone 1-20
708SC Menus. 1-20
Main Menu 1-20
Shortcuts 1-22
Switch Bar 1-22
Options. 1-23
Security Codes. 1-23
Phone Password. 1-23
Center Access Code. 1-23
Network Password. 1-24

2 Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call 2-2
Receiving a Call. 2-3
Reject Incoming Call 2-4
Answer Machine 2-5
Activating & Canceling. 2-5
Ringing Duration. 2-6

Sound Language 2-6
Checking Recordings 2-6
Engaged Call Operations 2-7
Earpiece Volume 2-7
Hold 2-7
Speaker Phone 2-7
Voice Recording 2-7
Engaged Call Options 2-8
Call Log Records 2-9
Viewing Call Log Records 2-9
Calling from Call Log Records 2-9
Deleting Call Log Records 2-10
Call Log Options 2-10
Call Manager 2-11
Data Counter, Call Costs, & Call Times 2-11
Edit Cost Limit 2-12
Display Call Cost during a Call 2-12
International Roaming 2-13
Changing Network Mode 2-13
Network Setup 2-13
Calling from Outside Japan 2-14
Emergency Calls 2-15

3 Manner Profile

Minding Mobile Manners 3-2
Manner Related Functions 3-2
Manner Profile 3-3
Changing Profile 3-3
Offline Mode 3-4

4 Entering Text

Text Entry 4-2
Text Entry Window 4-2
Changing Text Entry Mode 4-2
Key Assignments 4-3
Entering Characters 4-5
Hiragana/Kanji 4-5
Katakana 4-7
Alphanumerics 4-8
Numbers 4-9
Symbols, Pictograms, & Emoticons 4-10
Line Breaks 4-11
Quoting Saved Text 4-11
Hangul 4-12
Editing Text 4-12
Deleting 4-12
Copy/Cut, Paste, & Undo 4-13
Jump 4-14
Prediction On/Off (Japanese Only) 4-14

Learning On/Off (Japanese Only) 4-14
Font Size 4-15
User Dictionary (Japanese Only) 4-15
Saving to User Dictionary 4-16
SMS Templates 4-16

5 Phonebook

Saving to Phonebook 5-2
Phonebook Entry Items 5-2
Adding Entry Items 5-4
Saving from Call Log Records. 5-6
Category Settings. 5-7
New Category (USIM Card) 5-7
Edit Category 5-7
Add Member 5-8
Using Phonebook 5-9
Calling from Phonebook 5-9
Speed Dialing 5-12
Phonebook Options 5-13
Editing Phonebook Entries. 5-14
Edit 5-14
Default Number 5-14
Copy to USIM/Copy to Phone 5-15
Deleting Entries 5-15
My Phonebook Details 5-16

6 Video Call

Before Using Video Calls 6-2
Initiating a Video Call 6-2
Receiving a Video Call 6-2
Engaged Video Call Operations 6-3
Engaged Video Call Options. 6-5
Video Call Settings 6-5
Sending Your Image 6-5
Selecting a Substitute Image 6-6
Retry Settings 6-6
Voice Mute 6-7

7 Mobile Camera

Before Using Mobile Camera. 7-2
Mobile Camera Precautions 7-2
708SC Camera. 7-2
Using Display as Viewfinder 7-3
Capturing a Still Image 7-4
Camera Mode 7-4
Capturing Still Images. 7-5
Capturing Video 7-10
Video Mode. 7-10

Capturing Video 7-11
Mobile Camera Settings 7-13
Camera Settings 7-13
Video Settings 7-14
Viewing Images 7-15
Viewing Still Images 7-15
Viewing Videos 7-15
Editing Still Images 7-15
Editing Videos 7-17
Create Flash® 7-19
Attaching Images to a Message 7-20

8 Display Settings

Standby Display Settings. 8-2
Wallpaper 8-2
Clock Display 8-4
Operator Name 8-5
Menu Display 8-5
Menu Style 8-5
Popup Menu 8-6
List Font Size 8-6
Zoom List 8-7
Backlight Brightness & Duration. 8-7
Adjusting Display Brightness. 8-7
Backlight Duration 8-7
Sub LCD Light 8-8
Dialing Display 8-8
Greeting Messages 8-9
Display Language 8-10

9 Sound Settings

Changing Profile Settings. 9-2

10 Media Player

Before Using Media Player 10-2
Playing Music 10-3
Playing Melodies Using a Playlist. 10-6
Changing Music Player Settings 10-7
Repeat Mode 10-7
Tone Volume. 10-7
Audio Skin. 10-7
Visualization Mode 10-8
Playing Video. 10-9
Player Settings. 10-11
Repeat Mode 10-11
Tone Volume. 10-12
Resolution 10-12

11 Managing Files (Data Folder)

Data Folder **11-2**
Default Folders 11-2
Saved Files **11-3**
Opening Files 11-3
Using File Viewer 11-5
Viewing Graphics/Animation with the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer 11-8
Sorting Files 11-9
Using Files **11-10**
Wallpaper 11-10
Setting Sound File as Ringtone 11-11
Setting Video File as Ringtone. 11-11
Setting Flash® file as Wallpaper 11-12
Saving a vFile. 11-12
Data Folder Options 11-13
Managing Files/Folders **11-15**
Create Folder 11-15
Changing a File Name/Folder Name 11-15
Moving a File/Folder 11-15
Copying Files/Folders 11-16
Deleting a File/Folder. 11-17
Deleting a Content Key 11-19

12 External Connections

External Connections **12-2**
Bluetooth® **12-2**
Before Using Bluetooth® Communications 12-2
Sending & Receiving Data 12-4
Connecting Handsfree 12-9
Changing Bluetooth® Settings 12-10
USB Connection **12-11**
Connecting to a PC 12-12
Connecting to a Printer 12-12

13 Security

Change Phone Password **13-2**
PIN **13-2**
Changing PIN/PIN2 13-2
PIN Lock 13-3
Resetting PIN Lock 13-3
USIM Lock **13-4**
Handset Security **13-5**
Phone Lock 13-5
Password Lock 13-5
Privacy Lock 13-6

Activate Secret Mode 13-6
Mobile Tracker 13-7

Rejecting Incoming Calls 13-8
Reject Withheld 13-8
Reject Unavailable 13-8
Black List 13-9

Restoring Defaults 13-10
Clear Memory 13-10
Master Reset 13-11

14 Tools

Alarms. 14-2
Wake-up Alarm/Alarms 14-2
Auto Power On 14-4

Calendar 14-5
Displaying Calendar 14-5
Saving New Entries to Calendar 14-7
Viewing Saved Calendar Entries 14-12
Editing Calendar Entries 14-12
Deleting Calendar Entries 14-13
Calendar Options 14-14

Voice Recorder. 14-15
Voice Recorder Window 14-15
Recording Voice 14-16
Playing Voice 14-16
Changing Voice Recorder Settings 14-17

World Clock 14-18
Viewing World Clock 14-18
Selecting Areas 14-18

Using Calculator 14-19

Converting Currencies or Units 14-19
Converting Currencies 14-20
Converting Units 14-21

Stopwatch 14-22

Dictionary 14-22

Interpreter 14-23

15 Advanced Functions

Calling Functions 15-2
Auto Redial 15-2
International Dial 15-2
Earphone call 15-3

Handling Incoming Calls 15-5
Anykey Answer 15-5
Acoustic Shock 15-5
Active Folder 15-6
Side Key Silence/Reject 15-6

Side Key Lock 15-6

Simple Search Setting. 15-7

Idle Shortcuts **15-7**
Memory Status **15-8**

16 Optional Services

Optional Services **16-2**
Call Forwarding **16-3**
Activating Call Forwarding 16-3
Cancel All 16-4
Check Status 16-4
Voice Mail **16-5**
Activating Voice Mail 16-5
Canceling Voice Mail 16-6
Checking Settings 16-6
Listening to Messages 16-6
Incoming Call Notification 16-7
Call Waiting* **16-8**
Activating or Canceling 16-8
Receiving a Second Call 16-8
Conference Call* **16-9**
New Call 16-9
Engaged Conference Call Operations 16-10
Join 16-10
Call Barring **16-11**
Restrict Outgoing/Incoming Calls 16-12
Cancel All 16-12
Changing Network Password 16-13
Caller ID **16-13**
Show My Number 16-13
Adding 186 or 184 16-14

17 Receiving & Sending Messages

Getting Started **17-2**
Checking for New Messages **17-2**
Retrieving Complete Messages 17-4
Using Received Messages 17-5
Creating Messages **17-6**
Procedures 17-7
Address 17-8
Subject 17-11
Message 17-11
Sending a Message 17-12
Slide Show 17-12
Changing the Style of Message Field 17-13
Templates 17-14
Attaching/Inserting Files **17-15**
Attaching/Inserting a File from Data Folder, etc. into Message Field 17-15
Creating & Inserting a File 17-18

Saving Created Messages 17-20
Save to Drafts 17-20
Save as a Template 17-20

18 Messaging Folders

Viewing Messages 18-2
Message Lists 18-2
Message Window Operations. 18-5
Replying to a Message 18-7
Forwarding a Message 18-8
Sending from Drafts 18-8
Sending from Unsent Messages 18-9
Deleting a Message. 18-9
Deleting Specified Message(s). 18-9
Designating & Deleting a Mailbox 18-10
Deleting All Messages from a Mailbox 18-11
Linked Information 18-11
Saving to Phonebook 18-12
Saving as a Bookmark 18-12
Initiating a Call, Sending a Message, or Accessing the Web
. 18-12
Using an Attachment 18-13
Viewing an Attachment 18-13
Saving Attachments to Data Folder. 18-14
Managing Folders 18-15
Create Folder 18-15
Edit Folder. 18-15
Security ON/OFF 18-15
Moving Messages 18-16
Delete Folder 18-16
From Message List 18-16
Saving to Phonebook. 18-16
Sorting Messages. 18-17
Move to Phone/Move to USIM. 18-18
Saving an S! Mail Template 18-19
Message List Options 18-20

19 Server Mail

Message List 19-2
Acquire Mail List 19-2
Download 19-2
Delete. 19-3
Remote Forward 19-4

20 Other Message Settings

Customizing Handset Address. 20-2
S! Mail Settings 20-2

Sending Settings 20-2
Receiving Settings 20-3
Message Size 20-4
Default Style 20-4
SMS Settings 20-5
3D Pictogram Settings. 20-5
Reply with text 20-6

21 Mobile Internet

Getting Started. 21-2
Getting Online 21-3
Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu 21-3
Enter URL 21-3
Page Window Operations 21-4
Using Linked Info 21-6

22 Mobile Internet Files

Using Image Files. 22-2
Saving Images to Data Folder 22-2
Wallpaper 22-3
Using Sound Files. 22-4
Playing Sound 22-4
Saving Sound Files to Data Folder. 22-4
Using Video Files 22-6
Playing a Video 22-6
Saving Videos to Data Folder 22-6
Streaming. 22-7
Saving Pages 22-8
Saving a Page 22-8
Opening a Saved Page. 22-8
Change Title 22-8
Deleting a Saved Page. 22-9
Saving Bookmarks 22-9
Saving an Address as a Bookmark 22-9
Opening a Bookmark. 22-10
Editing Bookmarks 22-10
Deleting a Bookmark. 22-11
History. 22-11
Display Settings 22-12
Rendering 22-12
Search Text 22-13
Copy Text 22-13
Reload 22-13
Page Details. 22-14
Send URL 22-14
Server Certificate. 22-14
Returning to Default Page 22-15
Encoding 22-15
Information Window Options 22-15

23 Other Web Settings

Preferences 23-2
Security 23-2
Cookie Options 23-2
Activating/Deactivating Java Script 23-3
Text Size 23-3
Manufacture Number 23-3
Browser Information 23-3
Certificates 23-4
Refresh Browser 23-4
Empty Cache/Empty Cookies 23-4

24 S! Appli

Getting Started 24-2
S! Appli 24-2
Network S! Appli 24-2
Downloading S! Appli 24-2
Starting S! Appli 24-3
Exit, Pause, & Resume 24-3
Exiting or Pausing S! Appli 24-3
Restarting a Paused S! Appli 24-4
Managing S! Appli 24-4
Details 24-4
Lock/Unlock 24-4
Delete 24-5
mPet 24-5
Selecting Pet 24-5
mPet Operations 24-7
Other Operations 24-9
Comic Surfing 24-11
Browsing Electronic Comic 24-11
Security 24-12
S! Appli Settings 24-13
Backlight 24-13
Application Volume 24-13
Vibration 24-14
S! Appli Sort 24-14
Reset S! Appli Settings 24-14

25 Appendix

Functions 25-2
Troubleshooting 25-4
Software Update 25-10
Symbols & Pictograms 25-12
Symbols 25-12
Pictograms 25-14
Memory List 25-15

Specifications 25-15
INDEX 25-17
Warranty & After Sales Service. 25-24
Customer Service. 25-25

About This Guide

In this guide, 708SC refers to SoftBank 708SC. Instructions are described using mainly default settings. When settings are changed, screen shots or handset responses may differ from those depicted in this guide.

Screen Shots and 708SC Illustrations

Screen shots appearing in this guide are for reference only and may differ from actual displays. Product illustrations may vary from actual products.

Confirmations/Warning Messages

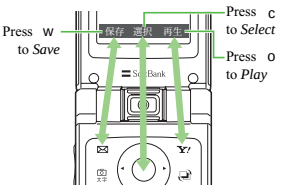
Messages not described in this guide may appear; read all confirmations and warning messages carefully.

Symbols

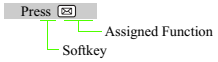
In this guide, symbols represent 708SC keys; see "Handset Parts & Functions" (P.1-6). Softkey and Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

Softkeys

Operation options appear at the bottom of Display. Press the corresponding Softkey to execute assigned functions.



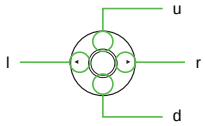
Softkey Operations



Multi Selector Operations

Use Multi Selector to select menu items, move cursor, and scroll, etc. In this guide, Multi Selector operations are indicated as shown below.

Basic Multi Selector Operations



j : Press u or d

s : Press l or r

a : Press u , d , l , or r

Highlighting

In this guide, "to highlight" means to move cursor to an item.

Menu Operations

Menu/Options operations are simplified with arrows.

Main Menu

1 **Press ◉ and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper***

Highlight an item and press c (Select)

For details, see "708SC Menus" (➲P.1-20).

Options

1 **Select *Options* → *Send* → *Via bluetooth***

Press o (Options) to open Options

Highlight an item and press c (Select)

Safety Precautions

- Read these safety precautions before using handset.
- Observe all precautions to avoid injury to yourself and others, or damage to property.
- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from use of this product.

Before Using Handset

● Symbols

Make sure you thoroughly understand these symbols before reading on. Symbols and their meanings are described below:

⚠ Danger	Great risk of death or serious injury from improper use
⚠ Warning	Risk of death or serious injury from improper use
⚠ Caution	Risk of injury or damage to property from improper use

	Prohibited Actions
	Compulsory Actions
⚠	Attention Required

⚠Danger

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Use only specified battery and Charger (P.i).

Using non-specified equipment may cause malfunctions, electric shock or fire due to battery leakage, overheating, or bursting.

Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep metal objects away from the Charger Port. Keep handset away from jewelry. Battery may leak, overheat, burst, or ignite causing injury. Use a case to carry handset.

Battery

If battery fluid gets into your eyes, do not rub them. Rinse with clean water and consult a doctor immediately.

Eyes may be severely damaged.

Prevent injury from battery leakage, breakage, or fire.
Do not:

- Heat or dispose of battery in a fire.
- Disassemble, modify, or break battery.
- Damage or solder on to battery.
- Use a damaged or deformed battery.
- Use a non-specified charger.
- Force battery into handset.

- Charge or place battery near fire, heat sources or expose it to extreme heat (➲P.i).
- Use battery for other equipments.

⚠Warning

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Do not insert foreign objects into handset.

Do not place metal or flammable objects in handset or Charger. This may cause fire or electric shock. Keep handset out of the reach of children.

Keep handset out of rain or extreme humidity.

Fire or electric shock may occur.

Keep handset away from liquid-filled containers.

Keep handset and Charger away from chemicals/liquids. Fire or electric shock may result.

Avoid sources of fire.

To prevent fire or explosion, do not use handset in the presence of gas or fine particles (Coal, dust, metal, etc.).

Keep handset and Charger away from microwave ovens.

Battery or handset may leak, burst, overheat, or ignite.

Do not disassemble or modify handset.

- Do not open the housing of handset or Charger; it may cause electric shock or injury. Contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance for repairs.
- Do not modify handset or Charger. Fire or electric shock may result.

If water or foreign matter gets inside handset:

Discontinue handset use to prevent fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug Charger and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not subject handset to shocks.

Subjecting handset or Charger to shocks may cause malfunction or injury. Should handset break, remove battery and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance. Discontinue handset use. Fire or electric shock may occur.

If an abnormality occurs:

Should there be any unusual sound, smoke, or odor, discontinue handset use to avoid fire or electric shock. Turn handset power off, remove battery, unplug the Charger, and contact the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Handset

Preventing accidents

- For safety, never use handset while driving. Pull over beforehand. Mobile phone use while driving is prohibited by the revised Road Traffic Law (Effective 1 November 2004).
- Do not use headphones while driving or riding a bicycle. Accidents may result.
- Do not turn the volume up so high that ambient sounds cannot be heard, especially when walking in or around traffic to avoid accidents.

Do not swing handset by the handstrap.

Injury or breakage may result.

Turn handset power off before boarding aircraft.

Using wireless devices aboard aircraft may cause electronic malfunctions or endanger aircraft operation.

Adjust vibration and Ringtone settings:

Select settings carefully if you have a heart condition or wear a pacemaker/defibrillator.

During thunderstorms, turn power off; find cover.

There is a risk of a lightning strike or electric shock.

Do not use the phone with wet hands.

Doing so may lead to electric shock or damage to 708SC.

Charger

Use only the specified voltage.

- Non-specified voltages may cause fire or electric shock.
- AC Charger: AC 100V-240V Input
  SoftBank is not liable for problems caused by charging handset abroad.
- In-Car Charger: DC 100V-240V Input

Do not use commercially available transformers.

Use of the AC Charger with commercially available transformers may cause fire, electric shock or damage.

Do not use In-Car Charger inside vehicles with a positive earth.

Fire may result. Use In-Car Charger only inside vehicles with a negative earth.

Do not touch the cooling blades with wet hands.

Electric shock may occur.

Do not use multiple cords in one outlet.

Excess heat or fire may occurs.

Do not bend, twist, pull, or set objects on the cord. Do not put heavy objects on the cords or heat or pull the cords.

Fire or electric shock may result.

Do not short-circuit Charger Port.

Keep the metal away from Port. Overheating, fire, or electric shock may result.

Do not use AC/In-Car Charger if the cord is damaged.

Fire or electric shock may be caused. Contact the SoftBank Customer Assistance to replace the cord.

Be sure to secure In-Car Charger.

Avoid injury or accidents.

During thunderstorms:

Unplug the Charger to avoid damage, fire, or electric shock.

Keep the Charger out of the reach of children.

Electric shock or injury may occur.

Battery

If battery does not charge properly, stop charging.

Battery may overheat, burst or ignite.

If there is leakage or abnormal odor, avoid fire sources.

It may catch fire or burst.

If there is abnormal odor, excessive heat, discoloration, or distortion, remove battery from handset.

It may leak, overheat, or explode.

Handset Use & Electronic Medical Equipment

This section is based on "Guidelines on the Use of Radio Communications Equipment such as Cellular Telephones and Safeguards for Electronic Medical Equipment" (Electromagnetic Compatibility Conference, April 1997) and "Report of Investigation of the Effects of Radio Waves on Medical Equipment, etc." (Association of Radio Industries and Businesses, March 2001).

People with implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators should keep handset more than 22 cm away.

Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Turn handset power off in crowded places such as trains. People with implanted pacemakers/ defibrillators may be near.

Implanted pacemakers/defibrillators may malfunction due to radio waves.

Observe these rules inside medical facilities:

- Do not take handset into operating rooms or Intensive or Coronary Care Units.
- Keep handset off in hospitals.
- Keep handset off in hospital lobbies. Electronic equipment may be near.
- Obey rules regarding mobile phone use in medical facilities.

Consult the manufacturer of other electronic medical equipment about radio wave effects.

⚠ Caution

Handset, Battery, & Charger

Handset Care

- Place 708SC on stable surfaces to avoid malfunction or injury.
- Keep 708SC away from oily smoke or steam. Fire or accidents may result.
- Cold air from air conditioners may condense, resulting in leakage, or burnout.
- Keep 708SC away from direct sunlight (Inside vehicles, etc.) or heat sources. Distortion, discoloration, or fire may occur. Battery shape may be affected.
- Keep 708SC out of extremely cold places to avoid malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 708SC away from fire sources to avoid malfunction or accidents.

Usage Environment

- Excessive dust may prevent heat release and cause burnout or fire.
- Avoid using 708SC on the beach. Sand may cause malfunction or accidents.
- Keep 708SC away from credit cards, phone cards, etc. to avoid data loss.

Handset

Avoid leaving 708SC in extreme heat (Inside vehicles, etc.).

Handset may heat up and lead to burns.

Volume settings

Keep handset volume moderate.

Excessive volume may cause damage to your hearing.

Headphones

- Do not unplug by pulling the cord; may damage the cord.
- Keep the plug clean to avoid noise or malfunction.

Inside vehicles:

Handset use may cause other electronic equipment to malfunction.

Should skin irritation occur, discontinue handset use and consult a doctor.

Skin irritation, rashes, or itchiness may result depending on your physical condition.

Parts	Materials & Finishing
Housing	PC/UV coating
Keypad	Mixture material
Charger & External Device Port Cover	Mixture material/ UV coating
Battery Cover	PC/UV coating
Side keys	Mixture material/ UV coating
Rotate Camera	PC/UV coating
Camera Ornament	PC/UV coating
Hinge Cap	Zinc Alloy/ Nickel coating

Charger

Charger & In-Car Charger

- Grasp the plug (not the cord) to disconnect Charger. Otherwise, fire or electric shock may result.
- Keep the cord away from heaters. Exposed wire may cause fire or electric shock.
- Stop use if the plug is hot or improperly connected. Fire or electric shock may result.
- Keep In-Car Charger socket clean. If might overheat and cause injury.

Use only the specified fuse

A 1A fuse is specified for In-Car Charger. An improper fuse may cause damage or fire.

Always charge 708SC in a well-ventilated area.

Avoid covering/wrapping Charger; may cause damage or fire.

Do not use In-Car Charger when engine is off.

Start engine before use; may weaken car battery.

Disconnect AC/In-Car Charger during long periods of disuse.

Be sure to unplug AC/In-Car Charger after use.

Handset Maintenance

When cleaning, disconnect AC/In-Car Charger to prevent shock or injury.

Installing In-Car Charger

Properly position the cable for safe driving to avoid injury or accidents.

Battery

Keep battery out of the reach of children.

They may sustain injuries. And when using, do not let them remove battery from handset.

Do not leave battery in direct sunlight or inside vehicles.

Overheating or fire may occur and performance may be reduced.

Do not expose battery to liquids.

Performance may deteriorate.

If battery fluid makes contact with skin or clothes:

Rinse with clean water immediately.

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse.

Tape over battery terminals before disposal, or bring them to a SoftBank shop. Follow local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Do not throw or abuse battery.

Battery may overheat, burst, or ignite.

Charge battery within a range of 5°C - 40°C.

Battery may leak/overheat and performance may deteriorate.

If a child is using handset, explain all these instructions and supervise handset's usage.

If there is any abnormal odor or excessive heat, stop using battery and call the SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.

Do not leave battery uncharged. Charge at least once every six months.

General Notes

General Use

- SoftBank is not liable for any damages resulting from accidental loss/alteration of any data on handset. Please keep separate records of Phonebook entries, etc.
- Handset transmissions may be disrupted inside buildings, tunnels, or underground, or when moving into/out of such places.
- Use handset without disturbing others.
- Handsets are radios as stipulated by the Radio Law. Under the Radio Law, handsets must be submitted for inspection upon request.
- Handset use near landlines, TVs or radios may cause interference.
- **Beware of eavesdropping.**
  Because this service is completely digital, the possibility of signal interception is greatly reduced. However, some transmissions may be overheard.
  Eavesdropping
  Deliberate/accidental interception of communications constitutes eavesdropping.

Inside Vehicles

- Never use handset while driving.
- Do not park illegally to use handset.
- Handset use may affect a vehicle's electronic equipment.

Aboard Aircraft

Never use handset aboard aircraft (Keep the power off).

Handset use may impair aircraft operation.

Function Restrictions

- After changing phone models or canceling 708SC contract, following functions become unavailable:
  - ∞ Camera
  - ∞ Media Player
  - ∞ S! Appli
- If 708SC is left unused, above functions may become unavailable.

Handset Care

- If handset is left with no battery or an exhausted one, data may be altered/lost. SoftBank is not liable for any resulting damages.
- Use handset between 5 ℃ - 40 ℃.
- Avoid extreme temperatures/direct sunlight.
- Exposing the lens to direct sunlight may damage the color filter and affect image color.
- Do not drop or subject handset to shocks.
- Clean handset with a dry, soft cloth. Using alcohol, thinner, etc. may damage it.
- Do not expose handset to rain, snow, or high humidity.
- Never disassemble or modify handset.
- Avoid scratching Display.
- When closing handset, keep straps, etc. outside to avoid damaging Display.
- When using headphones, moderate the volume to avoid sound bleed.
- Handset is not water-proof. Avoid exposure to liquids and high humidity.
  - ∞Keep handset away from precipitation.
  - ∞Cold air from air conditioning, etc. may condense causing corrosion.

∞Avoid placing handset in damp places (Restrooms, bath/shower rooms, etc.).

∞On the beach, keep handset away from water and direct sunlight.

∞Perspiration may get inside handset causing malfunction.

- Heavy objects or excessive pressure should be avoided. This may cause malfunction or injury.

  ∞Do not sit down with handset in a back pocket.

  ∞Do not place heavy objects on handset in a bag.

- Insert only specified devices into Headphone Port. Malfunction or damage may result.
- Always turn power off before removing battery. If battery is removed while saving data or sending mail, data may be lost, changed or destroyed.

Copyrights

Copyright laws protect sounds, images, computer programs, databases, other materials for copyright holders. Duplicated material is limited to private use only.

Use of materials beyond this limit or without permission of copyright holders may constitute copyright infringement, and be subject to criminal punishment. Comply with copyright laws when using images captured with handset camera.

The software contained in 708SC is copyrighted material; copyright, moral right, and other related rights are protected by copyright laws. Do not copy, modify, alter, disassemble, decompile, or reverse-engineer the software, and do not separate it from hardware in whole or part.

Trademarks

- Licensed by QUALCOMM Incorporated under one or more of the following United States Patents and/or their counterparts in other nations:
  4,901,307 5,490,165 5,056,109
  5,504,773 5,101,501 5,506,865
  5,109,390 5,511,073 5,228,054
  5,535,239 5,267,261 5,544,196
  5,267,262 5,568,483 5,337,338
  5,600,754 5,414,796 5,657,420
  5,416,797 5,659,569 5,710,784
  5,778,338
- S! Appli and Mail Art are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp.
- "SOFTBANK," SOFTBANK's equivalent in Japanese, and the SOFTBANK logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of SOFTBANK CORP. in Japan and in other countries.
- Yahoo! and the "Yahoo!" or "Y!" logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Yahoo! Inc.
- This product contains ACCESS Co., Ltd.'s NetFront Internet browser software. NetFront is a trademark or registered trademark of ACCESS Co., Ltd. in Japan and in other countries. ACCESS NetFront
- Part of the software in this product incorporates a module developed by the Independent JPEG Group.
- THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE MPEG-4 VISUAL PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR

THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER FOR (i) ENCODING VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD ("MPEG-4 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODING MPEG-4 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NONCOMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED BY MPEG LA TO PROVIDE MPEG-4 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION INCLUDING THAT RELATING TO PROMOTIONAL, INTERNAL AND COMMERCIAL USES AND LICENSING MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, LLC. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM.

- Contains Macromedia® Flash® Flash Lite™ technology by Adobe Systems Incorporated.
- Copyright© 1995-2005 Adobe Systems Incorporated. All rights reserved.
- Macromedia, Flash, Macromedia Flash, and Macromedia Flash Lite are trademarks or registered trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and other countries.
- JBlend™ is incorporated in this product. JBlend™ is a Java™ execution environment developed by Aplix Corporation for implementing

advanced performance and fast operation on small-memory systems.

- Powered by JBlend™ Technology.
  JBlend and JBlend logos are registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Powered by JBlend™, © 1997-2006 Aplix Corporation.
  All rights reserved.
- JBlend and all JBlend-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Aplix Corporation in Japan and other countries.
- Chaku-Uta® and Chaku-Uta Full® are registered trade marks of Sony Music Entertainment Corp.
- Java and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the United States and other countries.

- Bluetooth is a trademark of the Bluetooth SIG, Inc.
  The Bluetooth word mark and logos are owned by the Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Samsung Electronics is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

Bluetooth®

In the frequency band of the Bluetooth® functions of 708SC, Industrial, scientific or medical equipments such as microwave ovens or in-house radio stations such as the ones used in production lines or by amateur radio stations (Referred to as "other radio stations" hereafter) are used. In order to prevent radio interference with other radio equipments, follow the points listed below in using handset.

1. Before using Bluetooth® functions, confirm there are no "other radio stations" operating near you.

2. In case there is a radio interference with "other radio stations," move to some other place or stop the Bluetooth® functions (Stop emitting the radio waves) immediately.
3. If you have any questions or problems with Bluetooth® emissions, contact SoftBank as listed below:

Contact: SoftBank Customer Center

From a SoftBank handset, dial 157 (toll free) for General Information. See "Customer Service" (➲P.25-25) for landline numbers by service area.

708SC transmits on the 2.4 GHz band, employing frequency-hopping spread spectrum (FHSS) modulation, with resistance to radio frequency interference between 1.5 - 5 meters, depending on usage environment.

Health and Safety Information

Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

Certification Information (SAR)

Your wireless phone is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for radio frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. government. These FCC exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations, the National Counsel on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.The exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile phones employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless phones to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg). The FCC exposure limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the phone transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power

level, the actual SAR level of the phone while operating can be well below the maximum value. This is because the phone is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output.Before a new model phone is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the exposure limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model phone are performed in positions and locations (e.g. at the ear and worn on the body) as required by the FCC.

The highest SAR values for this model phone as reported to the FCC are GSM1900 Mode(Part 24) Head:1.06 W/Kg, Body-worn: 0.692 W/Kg. For body worn operation, this model phone has been tested and meets the FCC RF exposure guidelines whenused with a Samsung accessory designated for this product or when used with an accessory that contains no metal add that positions the handset a minimum of 1.5 cm from the body. Non-compliance with the above restrictions may result in violation of FCC RF exposure guidelines. SAR information on this and other model phones can be viewed on-line at www.fcc.gov/oet/fccid. This site uses the phone FCC ID number, A3L708SC. Sometimes it may be necessary to remove the battery pack to find the number. Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular phone, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular phone. Additional product specific SAR information can also be obtained at www.fcc.gov/cgb/sar.

Consumer Information on Wireless Phones

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published a series of Questions and Answers for consumers relating to radio frequency (RF) exposure

from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

What kinds of phones are the subject of this update?

The term wireless phone refers here to hand-held wireless phones with built-in antennas, often called °×cell,°± °×mobile,°± or °×PCS°± phones. These types of wireless phones can expose the user to measurable radio frequency energy (RF) because of the short distance between the phone and the user's head. These RF exposures are limited by Federal Communications Commission safety guidelines that were developed with the advice of FDA and other federal health and safety agencies. When the phone is located at greater distances from the user, the exposure to RF is drastically lower because a person's RF exposure decreases rapidly with increasing distance from the source. The so-called °×cordless phones,°± which have a base unit connected to the telephone wiring in a house, typically operate at far lower power levels, and thus produce RF exposures well within the FCC's compliance limits.

Do wireless phones pose a health hazard?

The available scientific evidence does not show that any health problems are associated with using wireless phones. There is no proof, however, that wireless phones are absolutely safe. Wireless phones emit low levels of radio frequency energy (RF) in the microwave range while being used. They also emit very low levels of RF when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects. Many studies of low level RF exposures have not found any biological effects. Some studies have suggested that some biological effects may occur, but such findings have not been

confirmed by additional research. In some cases, other researchers have had difficulty in reproducing those studies, or in determining the reasons for inconsistent results.

What is FDA's role concerning the safety of wireless phones?

Under the law, FDA does not review the safety of radiation-emitting consumer products such as wireless phones before they can be sold, as it does with new drugs or medical devices. However, the agency has authority to take action if wireless phones are shown to emit radio frequency energy (RF) at a level that is hazardous to the user. In such a case, FDA could require the manufacturers of wireless phones to notify users of the health hazard and to repair, replace or recall the phones so that the hazard no longer exists.Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, FDA has urged the wireless phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:.

- Support needed research into possible biological effects of RF of the type emitted by wireless phones;.
- Design wireless phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user that is not necessary for device function; and.
- Cooperate in providing users of wireless phones with the best possible information on possible effects of wireless phone use on human health.

FDA belongs to an interagency working group of the federal agencies that have responsibility for different aspects of RF safety to ensure coordinated efforts at the federal level. The following agencies belong to this working group:.

- National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health.
- Environmental Protection Agency.
- Federal Communications Commission.
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

- National Telecommunications and Information Administration

The National Institutes of Health participates in some interagency working group activities, as well.

FDA shares regulatory responsibilities for wireless phones with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). All phones that are sold in the United States must comply with FCC safety guidelines that limit RF exposure. FCC relies on FDA and other health agencies for safety questions about wireless phones.

FCC also regulates the base stations that the wireless phone networks rely upon. While these base stations operate at higher power than do the wireless phones themselves, the RF exposures that people get from these base stations are typically thousands of times lower than those they can get from wireless phones. Base stations are thus not the primary subject of the safety questions discussed in this document.

What are the results of the research done already?

The research done thus far has produced conflicting results, and many studies have suffered from flaws in their research methods. Animal experiments investigating the effects of radio frequency energy (RF) exposures characteristic of wireless phones have yielded conflicting results that often cannot be repeated in other laboratories. A few animal studies, however, have suggested that low levels of RF could accelerate the development of cancer in laboratory animals. However, many of the studies that showed increased tumor development used animals that had been genetically engineered or treated with cancer-causing chemicals so as to be pre-disposed to develop cancer in absence of RF exposure. Other studies exposed the animals to RF for up to 22 hours per day. These conditions are not similar to the conditions under which people use wireless phones,

so we don't know with certainty what the results of such studies mean for human health.

Three large epidemiology studies have been published since December 2000. Between them, the studies investigated any possible association between the use of wireless phones and primary brain cancer, glioma, meningioma, or acoustic neuroma, tumors of the brain or salivary gland, leukemia, or other cancers. None of the studies demonstrated the existence of any harmful health effects from wireless phones RF exposures. However, none of the studies can answer questions about long-term exposures, since the average period of phone use in these studies was around three years.

What research is needed to decide whether RF exposure from wireless phones poses a health risk?

A combination of laboratory studies and epidemiological studies of people actually using wireless phones would provide some of the data that are needed. Lifetime animal exposure studies could be completed in a few years. However, very large numbers of animals would be needed to provide reliable proof of a cancer promoting effect if one exists. Epidemiological studies can provide data that is directly applicable to human populations, but ten or more years' follow-up may be needed to provide answers about some health effects, such as cancer. This is because the interval between the time of exposure to a cancer-causing agent and the time tumors develop - if they do - may be many, many years. The interpretation of epidemiological studies is hampered by difficulties in measuring actual RF exposure during day-to-day use of wireless phones. Many factors affect this measurement, such as the angle at which the phone is held, or which model of phone is used.

What is FDA doing to find out more about the possible health effects of wireless phone RF?

FDA is working with the U.S. National Toxicology Program and with groups of investigators around the world to ensure that high priority animal studies are conducted to address important questions about the effects of exposure to radio frequency energy (RF).FDA has been a leading participant in the World Health Organization international Electromagnetic Fields (EMF) Project since its inception in 1996. An influential result of this work has been the development of a detailed agenda of research needs that has driven the establishment of new research programs around the world. The Project has also helped develop a series of public information documents on EMF issues.

FDA and Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association (CTIA) have a formal Cooperative Research and Development Agreement (CRADA) to do research on wireless phone safety. FDA provides the scientific oversight, obtaining input from experts in government, industry, and academic organizations. CTIA-funded research is conducted through contracts to independent investigators. The initial research will include both laboratory studies and studies of wireless phone users. The CRADA will also include a broad assessment of additional research needs in the context of the latest research developments around the world.

What steps can I take to reduce my exposure to radio frequency energy from my wireless phone?

If there is a risk from these products - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your exposure to radio frequency energy (RF). Since time is a key factor in how much

exposure a person receives, reducing the amount of time spent using a wireless phone will reduce RF exposure.

- If you must conduct extended conversations by wireless phone every day, you could place more distance between your body and the source of the RF, since the exposure level drops off dramatically with distance. For example, you could use a headset and carry the wireless phone away from your body or use a wireless phone connected to a remote antenna.

Again, the scientific data do not demonstrate that wireless phones are harmful. But if you are concerned about the RF exposure from these products, you can use measures like those described above to reduce your RF exposure from wireless phone use.

What about children using wireless phones?

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to users of wireless phones, including children and teenagers. If you want to take steps to lower exposure to radio frequency energy (RF), the measures described above would apply to children and teenagers using wireless phones. Reducing the time of wireless phone use and increasing the distance between the user and the RF source will reduce RF exposure.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using wireless phones at all. For example, the government in the United Kingdom distributed leaflets containing such a recommendation in December 2000. They noted that no evidence exists that using a wireless phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit wireless phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Do hands-free kits for wireless phones reduce risks from exposure to RF emissions?

Since there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from wireless phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used with wireless phones for convenience and comfort. These systems reduce the absorption of RF energy in the head because the phone, which is the source of the RF emissions, will not be placed against the head. On the other hand, if the phone is mounted against the waist or other part of the body during use, then that part of the body will absorb more RF energy. Wireless phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet safety requirements regardless of whether they are used against the head or against the body. Either configuration should result in compliance with the safety limit.

Do wireless phone accessories that claim to shield the head from RF radiation work?

Since there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from wireless phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories that claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone. Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike “hand-free” kits, these so-called “shields” may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption. In February 2002, the Federal trade Commission (FTC) charged two companies that sold devices that claimed to protect wireless phone users from radiation with making false and unsubstantiated claims. According to FTC, these defendants lacked a reasonable basis to substantiate their claim.

What about wireless phone interference with medical equipment?

Radio frequency energy (RF) from wireless phones can interact with some electronic devices. For this reason, FDA helped develop a detailed test method to measure electromagnetic interference (EMI) of implanted cardiac pacemakers and defibrillators from wireless telephones. This test method is now part of a standard sponsored by the Association for the Advancement of Medical instrumentation (AAMI). The final draft, a joint effort by FDA, medical device manufacturers, and many other groups, was completed in late 2000. This standard will allow manufacturers to ensure that cardiac pacemakers and defibrillators are safe from wireless phone EMI. FDA has tested wireless phones and helped develop a voluntary standard sponsored by the Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers (IEEE). This standard specifies test methods and performance requirements for hearing aids and wireless phones so that no interference occurs when a person uses a compatible phone and a compatible hearing aid at the same time. This standard was approved by the IEEE in 2000.

FDA continues to monitor the use of wireless phones for possible interactions with other medical devices. Should harmful interference be found to occur, FDA will conduct testing to assess the interference and work to resolve the problem.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations:

- FCC RF Safety Program:
http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/
- Environmental Protection Agency (EPA):
http://www.epa.gov/radiation/
- Occupational Safety and Health Administration's (OSHA):
http://www.osha.gov/SLTC/radiofrequencyradiation/index.html.

- National institute for Occupational Safety and Health (NIOSH):

http://www.cdc.gov/niosh/emfpg.html

- World health Organization (WHO):

http://www.who.int/peh-emf/

- International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection:

http://www.icnirp.de

- National Radiation Protection Board (UK):

http://www.nrpb.org.uk

- Updated 4/3/2002: US food and Drug Administration

http://www.fda.gov/cellphones

Road Safety

Your wireless phone gives you the powerful ability to communicate by voice, almost anywhere, anytime. But an important responsibility accompanies the benefits of wireless phones, one that every user must uphold.

When driving a car, driving is your first responsibility. When using your wireless phone behind the wheel of a car, practice good common sense and remember the following tips:

1. Get to know your wireless phone and its features, such as speed dial and redial. If available, these features help you to place your call without taking your attention off the road.

2. When available, use a hands-free device. If possible, add an additional layer of convenience and safety to your wireless phone with one of the many hands free accessories available today.

3. Position your wireless phone within easy reach. Be able to access your wireless phone without removing your eyes from the road. If you get an incoming call at an inconvenient time, let your voice mail answer it for you.

4. Let the person you are speaking with know you are driving; if necessary, suspend the call in heavy traffic

or hazardous weather conditions. Rain, sleet, snow, ice and even heavy traffic can be hazardous.

5. Do not take notes or look up phone numbers while driving. Jotting down a “to do” list or flipping through your address book takes attention away from your primary responsibility, driving safely.

6.Dial sensibly and assess the traffic; if possible, place calls when you are not moving or before pulling into traffic. Try to plan calls when your car will be stationary. If you need to make a call while moving, dial only a few numbers, check the road and your mirrors, then continue.

7.Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations that may be distracting. Make people you are talking with aware you are driving and suspend conversations that have the potential to divert your attention from the road.

8.Use your wireless phone to call for help. Dial 9-1-1 or other local emergency number in the case of fire, traffic accident or medical emergencies. Remember, it is a free call on your wireless phone!

9.Use your wireless phone to help others in emergencies. If you see an auto accident, crime in progress or other serious emergency where lives are in danger, call 9-1-1 or other local emergency number, as you would want others to do for you.

10.Call roadside assistance or a special non-emergency wireless assistance number when necessary. If you see a broken-down vehicle posing no serious hazard, a broken traffic signal, a minor traffic accident where no one appears injured, or a vehicle you know to be stolen, call roadside assistance or other special non-emergency number.

“The wireless industry reminds you to use your phone safely when driving.”

For more information, please call 1-888-901-SAFE, or visit our web-site www.wow-com.com Provided

by the Cellular Telecommunications & Internet Association

Operating Environment

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area and always switch your phone off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the phone or any accessory to another device, read its user's guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

As with other mobile radio transmitting equipment, users are advised that for the satisfactory operation of the equipment and for the safety of personnel, it is recommended that the equipment should only be used in the normal operating position (held to your ear with the antenna pointing over your shoulder).

Using Your Phone Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from radio frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless phone. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

Pacemakers

Pacemaker manufacturers recommend that a minimum distance of 15 cm (6 inches) be maintained between a wireless phone and a pacemaker to avoid potential interference with the pacemaker.

These recommendations are consistent with the independent research and recommendations of Wireless Technology Research.

Persons with pacemakers:

- should always keep the phone more than 15 cm (6 inches) from their pacemaker when the phone is switched on.
- should not carry the phone in a breast pocket.

- should use the ear opposite the pacemaker to minimize potential interference.

If you have any reason to suspect that interference is taking place, switch your phone off immediately.

Hearing Aids

Some digital wireless phones may interfere with some hearing aids. In the event of such interference, you may wish to consult your hearing aid manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

Other Medical Devices

If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your phone off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

Vehicles

RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Posted Facilities

Switch your phone off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

Potentially Explosive Environments

Switch your phone off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death.

Users are advised to switch the phone off while at a refueling point (service station). Users are reminded

of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants or where blasting operations are in progress.

Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often but not always clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.

Emergency Calls

This phone, like any wireless phone, operates using radio signals, wireless and landline networks as well as user programmed functions, which cannot guarantee connection in all conditions. Therefore, you should never rely solely on any wireless phone for essential communications (medical emergencies, for example).

Remember, to make or receive any calls the phone must be switched on and in a service area with adequate signal strength. Emergency calls may not be possible on all wireless phone networks or when certain network services and/or phone features are in use. Check with local service providers.

To make an emergency call:

1.If the phone is not on, switch it on.

2.Key in the emergency number for your present location (for example, 911 or other official emergency number). Emergency numbers vary by location.

3.Press [Send]

If certain features are in use (call barring, for example), you may first need to deactivate those features before you can make an emergency call.

Consult this document and your local cellular service provider.

When making an emergency call, remember to give all the necessary information as accurately as possible. Remember that your phone may be the only means of communication at the scene of an accident; do not cut off the call until given permission to do so.

Restricting Children's access to your Phone

Your phone is not a toy. Children should not be allowed to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the phone or make calls that increase your phone bill.

FCC Notice and Cautions

FCC Notice

- This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.
- This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and,if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

-Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.

-Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.

-Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
-Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help

The phone may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the phone if such interference cannot be eliminated.

Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association, One Battery march Park, Quincy, MA 02269, Attn: Publication Sales Division..

Cautions

Changes or modifications made in the radio phone, not expressly approved by Samsung, will void the user°Øs authority to operate the equipment.

Only use approved batteries, antennas and chargers. The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the phone warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the phone.

Although your phone is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending or sitting on it.

Other Important Safety Information.

- Only qualified personnel should service the phone or install the phone in a vehicle. Faulty installation or service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
- Check regularly that all wireless phone equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.
- Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases or explosive materials in the same compartment as the phone, its parts or accessories.
- For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including both installed or portable wireless equipment in the area over the air bag or in

the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.

- Switch your phone off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless phone in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft's operation.
- Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of telephone services to the offender, or legal action, or both.

Product Performance

Getting the Most Out of Your Signal Reception

The quality of each call you make or receive depends on the signal strength in your area. Your phone informs you of the current signal strength by displaying a number of bars next to the signal strength icon. The more bars displayed, the stronger the signal.

If you're inside a building, being near a window may give you better reception.Understanding the Power Save FeatureIf your phone is unable to find a signal after 15 minutes of searching, a Power Save feature is automatically activated. If your phone is active, it periodically rechecks service availability or you can check it yourself by pressing any key.

Anytime the Power Save feature is activated, a message displays on the screen. When a signal is found, your phone returns to standby mode.

Understanding How Your Phone Operates

Your phone is basically a radio transmitter and receiver. When it's turned on, it receives and transmits radio frequency (RF) signals. When you use your phone, the system handling your call controls the power level. This power can range from 0.006 watts to 0.2 watts in digital mode.

Maintaining Your Phone's Peak Performance

For the best care of your phone, only authorized personnel should service your phone and accessories. Faulty service may void the warranty.

There are several simple guidelines to operating your phone properly and maintaining safe, satisfactory service.

- Hold the phone with the antenna raised, fully-extended and over your shoulder.
- Try not to hold, bend or twist the phone's antenna.
- Don't use the phone if the antenna is damaged.
- Speak directly into the phone's receiver.
- .Avoid exposing your phone and accessories to rain or liquid spills. If your phone does get wet, immediately turn the power off and remove the battery. If it is inoperable, call Customer Care for service.

Availability of Various Features/Ring Tones

Many services and features are network dependent and may require additional subscription and/or usage charges. Not all features are available for purchase or use in all areas. Downloadable Ring Tones may be available at an additional cost. Other conditions and restrictions may apply. See your service provider for additional information.

Battery Standby and Talk Time

Standby and talk times will vary depending on phone usage patterns and conditions. Battery power consumption depends on factors such as network configuration, signal strength, operating temperature, features selected, frequency of calls, and voice, data, and other application usage patterns.

Battery Precautions

- Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way.
- Use the battery only for its intended purpose..If you use the phone near the network's base station, it uses less power; talk and standby time are greatly affected by the signal strength on the cellular network and the parameters set by the network operator.

- Battery charging time depends on the remaining battery charge and the type of battery and charger used. The battery can be charged and discharged hundreds of times, but it will gradually wear out. When the operation time (talk time and standby time) is noticeably shorter than normal, it is time to buy a new battery.
- If left unused, a fully charged battery will discharge itself over time.
- Use only Samsung-approved batteries and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers. When a charger is not in use, disconnect it from the power source. Do not leave the battery connected to a charger for more than a week, since overcharging may shorten its life.
- Extreme temperatures will affect the charging capacity of your battery: it may require cooling or warming first.
- Do not leave the battery in hot or cold places, such as in a car in summer or winter conditions, as you will reduce the capacity and lifetime of the battery. Always try to keep the battery at room temperature. A phone with a hot or cold battery may temporarily not work, even when the battery is fully charged. Li-ion batteries are particularly affected by temperatures below 0 °C (32 °F).
- Do not short-circuit the battery. Accidental short-circuiting can occur when a metallic object (coin, clip or pen) causes a direct connection between the + and - terminals of the battery (metal strips on the battery), for example when you carry a spare battery in a pocket or bag. Short-circuiting the terminals may damage the battery or the object causing the short-circuiting.
- Dispose of used batteries in accordance with local regulations. In some areas, the disposal of batteries in household or business trash may be prohibited. For safe disposal options for Li-Ion batteries, contact your nearest Samsung authorized service center. Always recycle. Do not dispose of batteries in a fire.

Care and Maintenance

Your phone is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty

obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years.

- Keep the phone and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.
- Keep the phone dry. Precipitation, humidity and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits.
- Do not use the phone with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the phone.
- Do not use or store the phone in dusty, dirty areas, as its moving parts may be damaged.
- Do not store the phone in hot areas. High temperatures can shorten the life of electronic devices, damage batteries, and warp or melt certain plastics.
- Do not store the phone in cold areas. When the phone warms up to its normal operating temperature, moisture can form inside the phone, which may damage the phone's electronic circuit boards.
- Do not drop, knock or shake the phone. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.
- Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents or strong detergents to clean the phone. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution.
- Do not paint the phone. Paint can clog the device's moving parts and prevent proper operation.
- Do not put the phone in or on heating devices, such as a microwave oven, a stove or a radiator. The phone may explode when overheated.
- When the phone or battery gets wet, the label indicating water damage inside the phone changes color. In this case, phone repairs are no longer guaranteed by the manufacturer's warranty, even if the warranty for your phone has not expired.
- If your phone has a flash or light, do not use it too close to the eyes of people or animals. This may cause damage to their eyes.
- Use only the supplied or an approved replacement antenna. Unauthorized antennas or modified accessories may damage the phone and violate regulations governing radio devices.
- If the phone, battery, charger or any accessory is not working properly, take it to your nearest

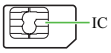
qualified service facility. The personnel there will assist you, and if necessary, arrange for service.

Getting Started

USIM Card

General Information & Precautions

Universal Subscriber Identity Module (USIM) Card is an IC card containing customer and authentication information, including handset number and limited storage for Phonebook entries and SMS. Install USIM Card to use 708SC; turn 708SC power off to insert/remove USIM Card.



USIM Card

Insert USIM Card into another compatible handset to access SMS and Phonebook entries saved on USIM Card. Note the following precautions regarding USIM Card usage and care (see USIM Card User Guide for details):

- Avoid using excessive force when Inserting/removing USIM Card.
- SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from inserting USIM Card into IC card readers or other third party devices.
- Always keep USIM Card IC chip clean.
- Clean USIM Card IC chip with a soft, dry cloth.
- Do not attach labels to USIM Card; malfunction may result.

Notes

- USIM Card is the property of SoftBank.
- If USIM Card is lost or damaged, you will be charged for reissuing it.
- Return USIM Card to SoftBank upon termination of subscription.
- Returned USIM Cards are recycled.
- USIM Card specifications may change without prior notice.
- If USIM Card or 708SC with USIM Card inserted is lost or stolen in Japan or abroad, immediately contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25) to suspend service.
- Handset/USIM Card repairs, replacement or upgrades may deactivate Chaku-Uta®, Chaku-Uta Full®,
  S! Appli, or video files on handset.
- Inserting another USIM Card (not the included one) into 708SC may deactivate preinstalled S! Appli or Comic Surfing files on handset.
- Back-up USIM Card files. SoftBank is not liable for lost files.

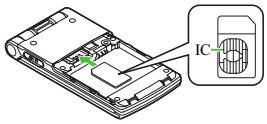
Inserting & Removing USIM Card

Always turn power off before opening 708SC to remove battery, or insert/remove USIM Card.

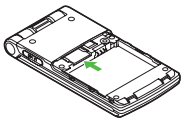
Inserting

1 **Remove battery (⇒P.1-13)**

2 **With IC chip down, insert USIM Card into card slot**



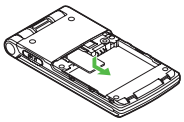
3 **Push in USIM Card until it stops and locks**



Removing

1 **Remove battery (⇒P.1-13)**

2 **Press down on USIM Card and gently slide it out**



Note

- **Inserting USIM Card with excessive force may damage it or 708SC.**
- **Do not misplace a removed USIM Card.**
- **To prevent damaging it, avoid touching the IC chip when Inserting or removing USIM Card. Do not touch battery contacts.**

USIM PINs

USIM Card features two (4- to 8-digit) security codes:
PIN and PIN2.

PIN

Use PIN to prevent unauthorized use of 708SC by others.

- Modify PIN (➔P.13-2).
- When *PIN lock* is activated, PIN entry is required each time 708SC is turned on or whenever USIM Card is re-inserted (➔P.13-3).

PIN2

PIN2 is required for Reset Call Cost or Edit Cost Limit, etc.

- Modify PIN2 (➔P.13-2).

Canceling PIN Lock (PUK/PUK2 Code)

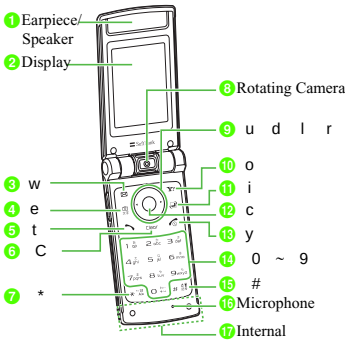
Incorrectly entering PIN or PIN2 three consecutive times activates PIN Lock and limits 708SC function access. Enter PUK (PIN Unlocking Key) Code to cancel PIN Lock. For more information, contact Customer Service (➔P.25-25).

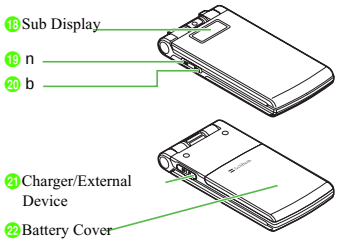
Note

- **Entering PUK or PUK2 incorrectly ten consecutive times locks USIM Card and deactivates 708SC. Write down PUK and PUK2.**
- **Unlocking a locked USIM Card requires a special procedure. Contact Customer Service (➔P.25-25).**

Handset Parts &

Handset





1 Earpiece/Speaker

2 Display

3 Left Softkey/Mail Key

Open Messaging menu or execute Left Softkey command/function.

4 Camera/Character Key

Activate Camera or select text entry mode.

5 Start Key

Initiate and receive Voice Calls.

6 Clear/Back Key

Delete entered text or return to the previous window.

7 ＊ Key

Enter line breaks in text entry windows.
In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to open Phone Profiles.

8 Camera

Capture images or send video during a Video Call.

9 Multi Selector

Select menu items, move cursor, scroll window.

10 Right Softkey/Yahoo! Keitai Key

Access Yahoo! Keitai or execute Right Softkey command/function.

11 Switch Bar Key

Display Switch Bar (➔P.1-22).

12 Center Key

Open Main Menu or execute Center Softkey command/function.

13 Power/End Key

Turn power on/off or end operations.

14 Keypad

Enter numbers or characters and select menu items.

15 #/Manner Key

Toggle Symbols menus in text entry windows.
In Standby, press for 1+ seconds to activate/cancel Manner Profile.

16 Microphone

17 Internal Antenna

18 Sub Display

19 n (Side Key)

Raise volume. Alternatively, enlarge the image during a Video Call.

20 b (Side Key)

Lower volume. Alternatively, reduce the image during a Video Call.

21 Charger/External Device Port

Connect Charger, Stereo Earphone Microphone, USB Cable, etc. here.

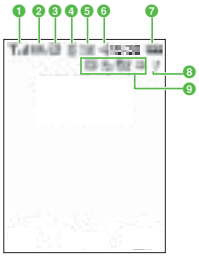
22 Battery Cover

Opened to insert/remove battery or USIM Card.

Tip

- **Internal Antenna**
  708SC has no external antenna. 708SC transmits and receives signals via Internal Antenna. Do not cover or place stickers, etc. over the area containing Internal Antenna. Voice quality may vary by where/how 708SC is used.

Display Indicators



1 Signal Strength (more bars indicate stronger signal)

Out-of-Range (outside service area or no signal when *Language* is set to *English* or 한국어)

Out-of-Range (When *Language* is set to *日本語*)

2 3G (UMTS) network connected/roaming
GSM network connected/roaming
Web SSL connected
3 (Blue) Bluetooth® Active
(Flashing in Blue & Pink) Bluetooth® Transmission
Bluetooth® Packet Data transmission
Bluetooth®-compatible headset connected
(Blue) USB Connected
(Flashing in Orange & Yellow) USB Active
S! Appli Active
S! Appli Paused
Packet Data transmission
4 Voice Call in Progress
Video Call in Progress
5 New S! Mail
New SMS
New Voice Mail
Unheard Answer Machine Message
Software Update Required
6 Normal Profile
Manner Profile
Car Profile
Meeting Profile
Outdoor Profile
Offline Profile
7 Battery Strong
Battery Moderate
Battery Low
(Flashing) Battery Weak (Charge Now)
8 Sound settings: Other than Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
Sound settings: Other than Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set; and Off for Voice Call in Vibration Set
Sound settings: Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
Sound settings: Off for Voice Call in Ringtone volume Set and Vibration Set

9 Roaming Active
Voice Mail/Call Forwarding Active
Answer Machine Active
S! Mail Memory Full
SMS Memory Full
Voice Mail Memory Full
Wake-up Alarm/Alarm Set

Tip

- **When (Red) appears, only packet data transmission and S! Mail sending are available; Voice Call, received S! Mail notification, and SMS sending/receiving are disabled.**

Sub Display

1 Signal Strength
(more bars indicate stronger signal)

2 Wake-up Alarm/Alarm Set
3 New Message
4 Manner Profile Set; and On for Voice Call in Vibration Set
5 Battery Strong
Battery Moderate
Battery Low
Battery Weak (Charge Now)

Battery & Charger

Before Using Battery or Charger

Charge battery before first use of 708SC or after periods of disuse.

Charging Battery

- Long periods of disuse may affect battery's ability to hold a full charge.
- 708SC uses a lithium-ion battery; charge battery in any state without damaging its ability to hold a charge.
- Do not charge battery under the following conditions:
  - Where the ambient temperature is below 5°C or above 40°C
  - Where there are high levels of humidity, vibrations or dust
  - Near a radio receiver (May cause feedback)
- 708SC or Charger may warm while charging. This is normal, however, should they become very hot to the touch, stop charging and contact Customer Service (➔P.25-25).
- Charge battery at least once every six months while not in use. Otherwise, battery may become unusable.
- Battery is a consumable; replace it if operating time shortens noticeably.

Note

- **Use specified Charger only.**
- **Battery must be inside 708SC to charge it.**
- **When not in use, unplug Charger from outlet or cigarette lighter socket.**

Battery Life

Battery time/life may be reduced by any of the following:

- Environmental Factors
  - Storing/using 708SC in places with ambient temperature or above 5°C below 40°C
  - Using 708SC in when signal is poor/leaving it on out-of-range
  - Allowing debris to collect on 708SC, battery or Charger Port
- Operational Factors
  - Active S! Appli
  - Camera use
  - Media Player use
  - Excessive Keypad use (e.g. for gaming or messaging, etc.)
  - Bluetooth® transmissions
  - Frequently opening and closing 708SC
- Settings
  - Using Slide Show
  - Setting Brightness higher or Backlight Time longer
  - Using Media Player with Backlight set to *Always on*

Battery Disposal

Do not dispose of exhausted batteries with ordinary refuse. Tape over battery terminals before disposal or take to a SoftBank shop. Follow any and all local regulations regarding battery disposal.

Lithium-ion batteries are recyclable.

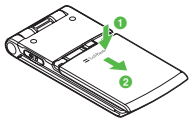
When Battery Runs Out

When battery is weak, a warning appears and 708SC beeps. Charge or replace battery; otherwise 708SC will automatically turn off.

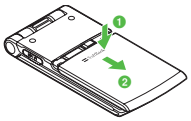
Inserting & Removing Battery

Inserting

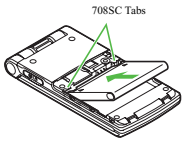
1 Press Battery Cover and slide as shown



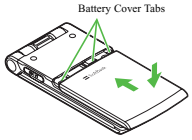
2 Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



3 Align Battery Slots and 708SC Tabs to insert battery as shown



4 Insert Battery Cover Tabs into 708SC Slots to attach Battery Cover as shown



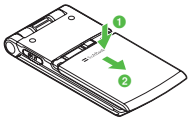
Note

- **Remove battery cover with care; stress on tabs may damage them.**
- **Gently insert battery to avoid damaging 708SC tabs.**

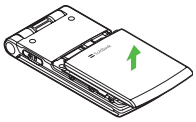
Removing

Always turn 708SC off before removing battery. Never remove battery while AC Charger or In-Car Charger is connected.

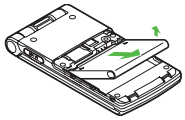
1 Press Battery Cover and slide as shown



2 Fully remove Battery Cover as shown



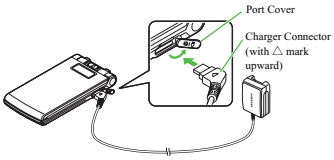
3 Lift battery up and remove as shown



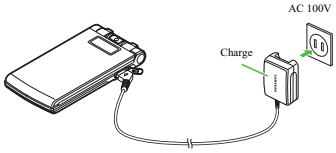
AC Charger

Use specified Charger only.

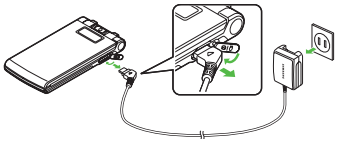
1 Open Port Cover and insert Charger Connector into the port



2 Plug Charger into an AC 100V outlet



3 When battery is charged, unplug Charger from outlet, then from 708SC



Tip

- **Battery Charged Confirmation**
  When 708SC is on while Charger is connected, battery indicators flash when battery is fully charged.
  While charging, battery indicators change as follows: → → .
  If 708SC is off while Charger is connected, battery indicator and graphic appear full on Sub Display & *Battery full* appears above graphic on Display when battery is fully charged. Otherwise, *Charging...* appears above animation on Display.
- **Charging Time**
  An empty battery requires 120 minutes (approx.) to charge when power on and Display off (no operation). Longer when Display on. Charging time may vary by ambient temperature.

Charging via PC USB Port

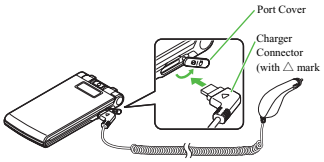
Battery will charge when 708SC is connected to a PC via included USB cable.

① Open Port Cover and insert USB Cable Connector
② Insert USB Connector into a PC USB port
③ When battery is charged, remove Connector from 708SC and replace Port Cover, then remove USB Connector from the PC USB port

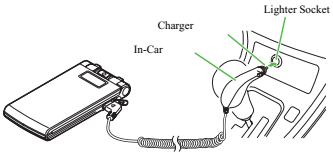
Charging via USB takes more time; charging time will vary by PC. A weak battery may not charge via a PC USB port.

In-Car Charger (Optional)

1 Open Port Cover and insert Connector Plug

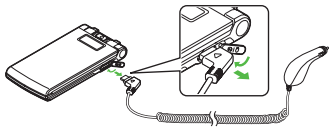


2 Insert Charger Connector into lighter socket



3 **Start the car's engine**

4 **When battery is charged, remove In-Car Charger Connector, replace Port Cover, then remove Charger Connector from lighter socket**



Tip

- **Battery Charged Confirmation (➔P.1-15)**
- **Charging Time (➔P.1-15)**
- **When using In-Car Charger**
  See In-Car Charger manual. For safety, use In-Car Holder together with In-Car Charger.

Note

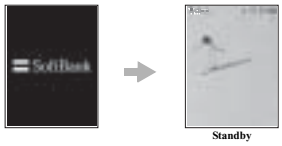
- **Do not charge battery in ambient temperatures over 40°C (e.g. inside a closed automobile in direct sunlight, etc.).**
- **Use In-Car Charger in cars with minus-earth only (DC 12/24V).**

Power On/Off

Power On

1 **Open 708SC**

2 **Press y for 1+ seconds**



Standby

Tip

- **To confirm handset phone number**
  In Standby, press c → 0 ; save or edit your information in My Phonebook Details including name and mail address (➲P.5-16).
- **When PIN lock is activated**
  PIN entry is required each time 708SC is turned on.
- **When 708SC is left open without operations**
  Display automatically shuts down to conserve power.

Note

- **Use both hands to open and close 708SC; avoid using excessive force which could damage handset or lead to malfunctions.**

Power Off

1 Press y for 2+ seconds

Time & Date

Time & Date

Default Setting	■Time format: 24H ■Date format: YYYY/MM/DD

Some 708SC functions cannot be used unless time and date are set. Open Time & Date to change Time Format or Date Format.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Time & date*

2 Adjust settings

To set time

Highlight Time field and enter the time (24-hour format)

To set AM/PM (for 12-hour format)

①Highlight Time field and press r twice for AM/PM option

②Use r to toggle AM and PM

To set date

Highlight Date field and enter the year, month, and day

To change time format

①Select Time format field

②Select the setting and press c

To change date format

①Select Date format field

②Select the setting and press c

3 Press w (Save)

Time Zone Updating

Default Setting	■Prompt first

Automatically update 708SC Date & Time using server's time zone information.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Time & Date*

2 Select *Time zone updating* and perform operations to set

3 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of *Time zone updating* are:**
  Manual only: Automatic update unavailable.
  Prompt first: When moving to the country/district with different time zone, update Time & Date according to the current time zone.
  Automatic: After set to this setting, 708SC turns the power off and on automatically; and update Time & Date according to the server's time zone information (Home time zone, Date, Time, etc.). Note that the information availability varies by network. If no information are available, use one of above settings.

Changing Home Time Zone

Default Setting	■Home zone: GMT+9h ■Daylight saving: Unchecked

Change time zone to the place you use handset.
Daylight saving time can also be set.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Time & date*

2 Select Home zone field

3 Perform operations to set

To set home time zone

①Use s to specify a target area
②Press c

To set daylight saving time

①Check *Daylight saving*
②Press w (OK)

4 Press w (Save)

708SC Menus

Main Menu

1 In Standby, press C

Main Menu

2 Highlight an item and press C (Select)

3 Repeat Step 2 to open/activate the target function

<Example> Select *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*

Select ***Settings***

Select ***Display settings***

Select ***Wallpaper Pictures***

Wallpaper Setup Window appears

Tip

- **To end an operation**
  Press y . Operation ends and 708SC returns to Standby. When multiple functions are active, the next active operation window appears.
- **To cancel/escape an operation**
  Press y . Operation/function is canceled and 708SC returns to Standby or the previous window appears. For some menus, a confirmation appears.
- **Menu operations (➲P.xiv)**

When Popup Menu (➲P.8-6) is *On*

Display is different (Step 2), however operations remain the same.

Selecting items with Keypad

When numbered items appear in menus, etc., use keypad to select them.

Shortcuts

In Standby, press a key to open the assigned shortcut.

Key	Corresponding Menu/Function
w	Messaging
o	Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu
o (1+ seconds)	Yahoo! Keitai Menu
e	Mobile Camera (last used function)
i	Switch Bar
u	Idle shortcut*
d	Phonebook list
l	Call Log (*Received*)
r	Call Log (*Dialled*)
t	Call Log (*Current Contacts*)
* (1+ seconds)	Phone Profiles
# (1+ seconds)	Activate/Cancel Manner Profile

* Create shortcuts for frequently used functions in Idle shortcut (➲P.15-7).

Switch Bar

Initiate *Call*, *Messaging*, *Yahoo! Keitai*, or *Media Player*; use multiple functions concurrently (e.g., create a message while listening to music, or browse the Mobile Internet while talking on the phone).

1 In Standby or an active function window, press i

2 Use s to highlight a function and press c (Select)

To exit an active function

From the window of the function to exit, press y

To exit all active functions

① Press i

② Use s to highlight *End all?* and press c (Yes)

Tip

- **When exiting all active functions**
  Even if during message creation or mobile Internet site access via Yahoo! Keitai, all active functions ends at once without confirmation messages. Press y once for each function to exit after confirmation. Exiting all active functions during message creation or voice/video recording, also deletes created/recorded data.

Options

When *Options* appears at bottom-right of Display, press o to open *Options*. To execute an option, highlight the item and press c (Select).

Tip

- **See "Options" (➲P.xiv)**

Security Codes

Phone Password, Center Access Code and Network Password are required to use 708SC.

Phone Password

"9999" is set by default; required to use/change some 708SC functions.

- Entered digits are represented with*
- If incorrect, an error message appears; try again.
- Change Phone Password as required

Center Access Code

The 4-digit number specified at subscription; required for Optional Services or to subscribe to fee-based Web information services.

For details, contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).

Network Password

"9999" is set by default; required to restrict handset services. Entering Network Password incorrectly three consecutive times locks Call Barring settings. To resolve, Network Password and Center Access Code must be changed. For details, contact Customer Service
(➲P.25-25).

- Network Password can be changed on 708SC (➲P.16-13).

Note

- **Write down Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password. If you forget any of these codes contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).**
- **Do not reveal Phone Password, Center Access Code, or Network Password to others. SoftBank is not liable for damages caused by misuse of these codes by others.**

Basic Handset Operations

Initiating a Call

See P.5-9 to call from a Phonebook entry or P.6-2 for Video Calls.

1 Enter a phone number

When Phonebook list appears (➲P.5-11)

To use Speed Dialing (➲P.5-12)

2 Confirm the number and press t

3 Press y to end the call

Tip

- **To correct entered digits**
  Press C to delete the last digit. Press C for 1+ seconds to delete all.
- **When the line is busy**
  Press y to end the call and try again later. If Auto Redial is active, number is automatically redialed. Press o (Cancel) or y to cancel.
- **When Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected**
  Enter a number and press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to initiate a call. When *Earphone call* is set to *On*, press switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number. Press switch for 1+ seconds to end a call.
- **Engaged Call Operations (➲P.2-7)**

Placing international calls from Japan

A separate subscription is required for international calls.

① Enter a phone number
② Select *Options* → *International dial*
③ Select country or *Enter Code* for direct entry
④ Select *Japan*
⑤ Confirm the number and press t

Using a SoftBank handset overseas

Enter handset phone number; country code is not required.

Calling from overseas (➲P.2-14)

Options

Item	Description
Video call	Initiate a Video Call.
Add to Phonebook	Save a number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➲P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the number (➲P.17-6).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Call log	Open Call Log.
International dial	Add international code and country code to a number (➲P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Initiate a Voice/Video Call with your number Shown/Hidden. Select *None* to follow Caller ID settings. Select *Show my ID* to show your number. Select *Hide my ID* to hide your number.

Receiving a Call

1 When 708SC rings/vibrates, press t or c (Accept)

2 Press y to end the call

Tip

- **When Anykey Answer is set to *On***
  Press any key except w , o , y , or Side Key n b to answer Voice Calls.
- **To mute 708SC ringer for an incoming call**
  While 708SC rings/vibrates, press w (Mute); caller continues to hear ringback tone. To answer the call, press c (Accept).
- **To adjust ringer volume**
  While 708SC rings/vibrates, press Side Key n or b .
- **When Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected**
  When 708SC rings/vibrates, press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to accept a call. Press again for 1+ seconds to end the call.
- **Engaged Call Operations (➲P.2-7)**

Ringtones

Specify ringtones for saved numbers by Phonebook entry or Category (➲P.5-4, 5-7). When no ringtone is set, 708SC rings according to Profile Settings (➲P.9-2). Under following conditions, 708SC rings according to each Mode; Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook(contains caller's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to *On*.

Incoming call window

If caller sends Caller ID, phone number appears; if saved in Phonebook, name appears. When an image is set in Phonebook or Category, image also appears (➲P.5-4, 5-7). If caller hides Caller ID, *Withheld* appears.
Under following conditions, no name/image appears; Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook(contains caller's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to *On*.

Missed call window

After an unanswered incoming call, Missed call window appears. Press w (View), to open Missed Call Log (➲P.2-9).

When you cannot answer a call

Use Call Forwarding/Voice Mail to forward incoming calls to a specified number automatically/to save messages at Voice Mail Center. When Call Forwarding or Voice Mail is set to *No reply*, press o (Busy) to forward an incoming call immediately (➲P.16-3, 16-5). Use Answer Machine to record caller messages. Up to 3 messages (15 seconds per message) can be recorded in 708SC (➲P.2-5).

Reject Incoming Call

Proactively disconnect an incoming call without answering it. The rejected call is recorded in *Missed*.

1 While 708SC rings/vibrates, press y

Tip

- **When Side Key is set to *Reject***
  Reject an incoming call by pressing Side Key n or b for 1+ seconds.
- **To reject call and send a busy message**
  When neither Call Forwarding (➲P.16-2) nor Voice Mail (➲P.16-2) is active, press o (Busy) to proactively disconnect a call without answering it; "busy" message appears on the caller's handset before the call is disconnected. If the caller's handset is incompatible the call is simply disconnected.
- **To automatically reject a call (➲P.13-8)**

Answer Machine

Record caller messages on handset. Up to 3 messages (15 seconds per message) can be recorded.

Activating & Canceling

Default Setting	■Off

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Setting*

2 Select the setting and press c (Save)

Note

- **Answer Machine cannot be used when handset is off, out-of-range or in *Offline mode*. Use Voice Mail to record caller messages while incoming transmissions are blocked.**
- **If the free space of the shared memory (➲P.25-15) on 708SC is less than 600K bytes, you cannot use Answer Machine.**

With Answer Machine set
In Standby, appears.

Ringing Duration

Default Setting ■10 seconds

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Ringing duration***

2 **Select an item or *Other (0-60Secs)* to set a time**

3 **Press C (Save)**

Sound Language

Default Setting ■日本語

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Sound language***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Checking Recordings

When Answer Machine records caller messages, appears in Display.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Answer machine* → *Recordings***

2 **Highlight the message to check and press C (Play)**

Tip

- **To delete messages**
  Highlight the message to delete, press W (Delete) and select *Yes*.

Engaged Call Operations

Earpiece Volume

Adjust Earpiece or Earphone volume. Setting remains even after power off.

1 **During a call, press Side Key n or b**

Hold

When a call is put on hold, the party on hold hears a hold tone and neither party can hear the other's voice. A subscription to Call Waiting (➔P.16-8) or Conference Call (➔P.16-9) is required before calls can be placed on hold.

1 **During a call, press w (Hold)**

2 **Press w (Retrieve) to reconnect the call**

Speaker Phone

1 **During a call, press c ( ) and select *Yes***

To cancel Speaker Phone

Press c ( )

Voice Recording

Record voice of a maximum of 2 minutes during a call.

1 **During a call, select *Options* → *Record***

2 **Press c (Record)**

3 Perform operations to stop/pause

To stop and save

Press w (Stop)

To pause and save

①Press c (Pause)

②Press c (Record) to restart recording; press w (Save) to end recording

Tip

- **Recorded voice**
  Recorded voice files are saved to Sounds & Ringtones folder in Data Folder.
- **When another party calls during recording**
  With Call Waiting subscription, stops ongoing recording and incoming call window appears.
- **When 708SC ends a call during recording**
  708SC stops recording automatically and saves the voice files.

Engaged Call Options

Item	Description
Whisper on/off	With *On*, raise the volume of sent sounds even when lowering your voice.
Mute	Check *Voice* or *Key tone* and press w (OK) to cancel sending no sounds or key tones.
New call	Enter a number and press c (Call) to initiate another call; requires a subscription to Conference Call (➲P.16-9).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➲P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the number (➲P.17-6).
Send DTMF	Enter digits then press c (Send) to send tones.
Record	Record caller's voice during a call (➲P.2-7).

Item	Description
Memo	Create and save text memos (➔P.14-10).
End call	Disconnect call.
Switch to headset/Switch to phone	Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use. Select headset or phone (handset).

Call Log Records

Viewing Call Log Records

Current contacts	All incoming and outgoing calls
Missed	All missed incoming calls
Received	All received incoming calls
Dialled	All outgoing calls

1 **Press r**

2 **Use s to select a Call Log**

To confirm the number and call duration for a record

Highlight an item and press c (View)

Call Log Record Indicators

: Voice Call to/from a number saved in Phonebook

: Call to/from a number saved in USIM Card Phonebook

: Voice Call to/from an unsaved number

: Video Call to/from a number saved in Phonebook

Current Contacts (all incoming/outgoing calls) Indicators

: Received call : Rejected incoming call

: Missed call : Dialed call

Tip

- **While Secret Mode is set to *Hide***
  Phonebook(contains a Call Log record's number as an entry)'s Secret Mode is set to *On*; the name of a Call Log record does not appear.

Calling from Call Log Records

1 **Press r**

2 **Use s to select a Call Log**

3 **Highlight a record and press t**

To initiate a Video Call

Select *Options* → *Video call*

Deleting Call Log Records

Deleting One Record

Delete one Call Log record.

1 **Press r**

2 **Use s to select a Call Log**

3 **Highlight a record, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes***

Tip

- **To delete individual calls from records**
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Highlight a record and press c (View)
  ③ Highlight a call, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

Deleting All Records

Delete all Call Log records at once.

1 **Press r**

Use s to select *Current contacts*

2 **Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All* → *Yes***

3 **Enter Phone Password and press c (Confirm)**

Call Log Options

Item	Description
Voice call	Initiate a Voice Call to the current number.
Video call	Initiate a Video Call to the current number (➔P.2-9).
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➔P.5-6).
Create msg	Open a new message addressed to the current number (➔P.17-6).
Delete	Delete the current Call Log record (➔P.2-10).
Add to black list	Add the number to Black List (➔P.13-9).
View phonebook details	Open Entry details for a number.
International dial	Add international code and country code to the number (➔P.2-2).
Hide/Show my ID	Initiate a Voice/Video Call with your number Shown/Hidden. Select *None* to follow Caller ID settings. Select *Show my ID* to show your number. Select *Hide my ID* to hide your number.

Call Manager

Data counter	Confirm/reset incoming/outgoing data volume.
Call costs	Confirm/reset Total Costs, Last Call Cost or Cost Limit; change Call Costs currency unit.

Call times	Confirm/reset incoming/outgoing Voice/Video Call Times.

Data Counter, Call Costs, & Call Times

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call manager*

2 Select an item

To reset Data counter

①In Data counter, highlight item to reset, select *Options* → *Reset*

②Select *Yes*

To reset all Data counter

①In Data counter, highlight item to reset, select *Options* → *Reset all*

②Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm), and select *Yes*

To reset Call Costs

①In Call Costs, select *Options* → *Reset call cost*

②Enter PIN2 and press C (Confirm)

To reset Call Times

①In Call Times, highlight item to reset, select *Options* → *Reset* → *Yes*

To reset all Call Times

①In Call Times, highlight item to reset, select *Options* → *Reset all*

②Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm) → *Yes*

To change Call Costs currency unit

①In Call Costs, select *Options* → *Setup currency*

②Enter PIN2 and press C (Confirm)

③Highlight Price field to enter a price in Yen

④Highlight Currency field and enter the currency unit.

⑤Press W (Save)

Edit Cost Limit

After reaching the call cost limit, only emergency calls (➲P.2-15) can be initiated; messaging, web connections (fee-based operations) are disabled.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call manager***

2 **Select *Call costs***

3 **Select *Options* → *Edit cost limit***

4 **Enter PIN2 and press C (Confirm)**

5 **Enter limit**

Display Call Cost during a Call

Default Setting	■Off

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call manager* → *Display call cost***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

International Roaming

A separate subscription is required for international calls. Contact Customer Service for more information about international roaming.

Changing Network Mode

Default Setting	■3G

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Network mode***

2 **Select the setting**

Tip

- **The contents of *Network mode* are:**
  Automatic: Network is set automatically by location.
  GSM 900/1800: Available overseas.
  GSM 1900: Available overseas.
  3G: Available domestically and overseas.

Network Setup

Selecting a Network

Default Setting	■Automatic

Select a network (operator) by location or use automatic setting.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Network selection***

2 **Select the setting**

To select automatically

Select *Automatic*

To select a specific network

①Select *Manual*

②Select a network

Preferred Networks

Insert networks into Preferred Networks list or add them to the end. Select networks from Network List or create new network entries.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Preferred networks*

2 Edit Preferred Networks

To insert/add a network from Network List

①When inserting, highlight insert position

②Select *Options* → *Insert* or *Add* → *Network list*

③Select a network and press C (Insert/Add)

To insert/add a new network

①When inserting, highlight insert position

②Select *Options* → *Insert* or *Add* → *New network*

③Enter network settings and press W (Insert/Add)

To delete a network from Preferred Networks

Highlight network to delete, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Yes*

Tip

- **New Network Settings**

Country code	Up to 3 digits
Network code	Up to 3 digits
Network name	Up to 20 single-byte alphanumerics
Network type	GSM or 3G

Calling from Outside Japan

1 Enter phone number including area code

To call an in-country landline or mobile phone

Proceed to Step 5

To enter country code, etc. directly

Press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter +, enter country code and phone number omitting the first 0 (except when calling landlines in Italy) and proceed to Step 5

2 Select *Options* → *International dial*

3 Select country or *Enter Code* for direct entry

4 Select *Abroad*

5 Confirm number and press t

Tip

- **To change/add International code or country code (➲P.15-2)**

Emergency Calls

Some emergency numbers (110 (Police), 119 (Fire), etc.) are available even when certain Call Barring settings are active. See details below.

708SC Status	Available Numbers
Offline mode (➲P.3-4) is active.	None
Call Cost limit exceeded (➲P.2-12).	110, 119, 118
708SC is locked (➲P.13-5).	None
Required PIN not entered (➲P.13-3).	None
USIM Card cannot be authenticated (➲P.13-4).	None
Outgoing Call Barring (➲P.16-11) is active.	110, 119, 118

Note

- **SoftBank can not guarantee connections in all countries and regions. Handset operations may vary by network, signal, or function settings.**

Manner Profile

Minding Mobile Manners

Please take care not to disturb others when using your handset.

- Turn 708SC off in theaters, museums, and other places where silence is the norm.
- Keep 708SC off aboard airplanes, inside hospitals, or in other places where handset use is prohibited.
- Refrain from using 708SC in places such as restaurants, hotel lobbies, or elevators.
- Observe announcements or posted instructions regarding handset use aboard trains, etc.
- Refrain from handset use that interrupts the flow of pedestrian or vehicle traffic.

Manner Related Functions

708SC offers two manner-related profiles.

Manner Profile:

Silence 708SC sounds and activate Vibration for all alerts, tones, and alarms. Use Manner Key to activate or cancel Manner Profile.

Offline Profile:

Temporarily suspend 708SC transmissions; other 708SC functions may still be used while Offline Profile is active.

Muting/vibrating 708SC can be selected respectively for alert tone, ringtone, or alarm in Sound settings other than Manner/Offline profile.

Manner Profile

1 In Standby, press # for 1+ seconds

Tip

- **When Manner Profile is active**
  appears.
- **Even when Manner Profile is active, shutter click sounds for Camera.**

Changing Profile

708SC features five Profiles, including Manner Profile.

1 In Standby, press * for 1+ seconds

2 Select a Profile

3 Press C (Save)

Tip

- **To change 708SC Profile (P.9-2)**

Profiles

Select a Profile depending on usage and edit settings as required (P.9-2).

Profile	Description
Normal	Normal sounds produced by 708SC
Manner	No sounds produced by 708SC
Car	Set Automatic reception of Voice Calls and activation of Speaker Phone for use while driving
Meeting	Ringtone or Key tone preset to Vibration or Mute
Outdoor	Ringtone or Key tone preset to maximum sound volume

Offline Mode

Default Setting	■Off

1 **Press C and select *Settings*→ *Call settings* → *Offline mode***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Tip

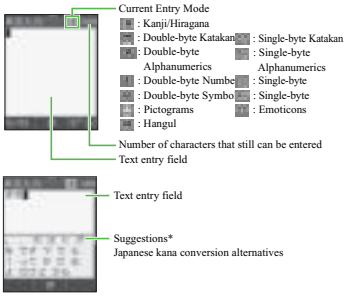
- **Turning 708SC Off with *Offline mode* active**
  When turning on again, a confirmation for use of *Offline mode* appears. Press O (No) to select Normal Profile.

Entering Text

Text Entry

Enter kanji/hiragana/hangul, single- or double-byte katakana, alphanumerics, or symbols/pictograms/emoticons.

Text Entry Window



*Suggestions appear only in Kanji/Hiragana mode, when Prediction setting is *On*.

Number Only Text Entry Fields

Text entry windows do not appear for Phonebook Phone fields or Alarm Time fields; enter numbers directly into these fields.

Changing Text Entry Mode

Text Entry modes may be limited in some text entry fields or windows.

1 In a text entry window, press e

2 Highlight entry mode and press c

Tip

- **To toggle symbols**
  In text entry windows, press # to toggle Symbols, Pictograms, and Emoticons.

Key Assignments

Multiple characters are assigned to each key. Press a key repeatedly until the target character appears.
Press * to add ゛ or ゜ to kana or enter line breaks and # to toggle symbols.

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
1	あいうえおぁぃぅぇぉ1	アイウエオァィゥェォ1	.@-_/:~[1]1	1
2	かきくけこ2	カキクケコ2	abcABC2	2
3	さしすせそ3	サシスセソ3	defDEF3	3
4	たちつてとっ4	タチツテトッ4	ghiGHI4	4
5	なにぬねの5	ナニヌネノ5	jklJKL5	5
6	はひふへほ6	ハヒフヘホ6	mnoMNO6	6
7	まみむめも7	マミムメモ7	pqrsPQRS7	7
8	やゆよゃゅょ8	ヤユヨャュョ8	tuvTUV8	8
9	らりるれろ9	ラリルレロ9	wxyzWXYZ9	9
0	わをんゎ、。ー・〜！？〈Space〉0	ワヲンヮ[2]、。ー・〜！？〈Space〉0	,.-_!?〈Space〉0	0
*	• Toggle between upper- and lower-case or add ゛ or ゜ to unfixed, convertible kana • Enter Line Break		• Toggle between upper- and lower-case • Enter Line Break	Enter Line Break

Key	Kanji/Hiragana	Katakana	Alphanumerics	Numbers
#	• Reverse toggle characters assigned to the same key before finalizing character selection • Toggle Pictograms, Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols, Emoticons			Toggle Pictograms, Double-byte Symbols, Single-byte Symbols, Emoticons

1 When double-byte, "~" cannot be used ("～"appears on Display).
2 Single-byte "ｯ " (lower case) cannot be entered.

When calls/alarms interrupt text entry

Answer incoming calls without saving text first; disconnect call to return to text entry window. Similarly, close Alarm window to return to text entry window.

Entering Characters

Hiragana/Kanji

Enter hiragana/kanji with or without conversion predictions. When Prediction setting is *On*, Suggestions appear below text entry window.

1 Activate Kanji/Kana entry mode to enter hiragana

To add ゛ or ゜

Enter a valid character and press *

To correct a misentry

Use C to delete the character then enter the correction

When key is pressed too many times

Press # to return to the previous character assigned to the same key

To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press r to move cursor to the right

To enter unconverted hiragana

Press c (Confirm)

2 Convert hiragana

To select a conversion from Suggestions

①Press d to move between Suggestions

②Highlight a conversion and press c (Confirm)

When the desired conversion does not appear

①Press w (Convert)

②Use s to change the conversion range

③Press d to move to Suggestions

④Highlight a conversion and press c (Confirm)

⑤Repeat steps ② through ④ as required

Tip

- **When characters do not convert to the intended Kanji**
  Try entering different readings of the Kanji. When multiple Kanji characters do not convert together, try to convert them separately.
- **To switch the contents in Suggestions between a predicted/conversion alternatives**
  If you press w (Convert) while predicted alternatives are displayed, conversion alternative will be displayed, and if you press w (Predict) while conversion alternatives are displayed, predicted alternatives appear.
- **To set/release the prediction entry function (➲P.4-14)**
- **To convert easily by using *User dictionary* (➲P.4-15)**
- **To enter date/time**
  ① Press a key to enter a key to which numbers are assigned
  ② Press o (EngNumカナ)
  ③ Highlight a conversion alternative and press c (Confirm)

Resetting Text Entry History

As for predicted/conversion alternatives, character strings/kanji converted in the past take priority to appear. Restore the displayed contents to defaults.

① Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Reset learning*

② Enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Katakana

1 In Katakana mode, press a key to enter the assigned character

To add ˚ or ˚

Enter a Katakana to which a voiced or semi-voiced sound symbol should be added and press *

To correct a misentry

Use C to delete the character and press the correct key

When key is pressed too many times

Press # to return to the previous character assigned to the same key

To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press r to move cursor to the right

Tip

- **To enter Katakana in Kanji/Kana entry mode**
  For example, to convert "くも" to "クモ" or "ｸﾓ".

① In Kanji/Kana entry mode, enter hiragana
② Press o (EngNumｶﾅ)
③ Highlight katakana conversion alternative and press c (Confirm)

Alphanumerics

1 In Alphanumerics entry mode, press a key to enter the assigned character

To toggle upper and lower case
Enter a character and press *

To correct a misentry
Use C to delete the character and press the correct key

When key is pressed too many times
Press # to return to a previous character assigned to the same key

To enter consecutive characters assigned to the same key

Press r to move cursor to the right

Tip

- **To enter alphanumerics in Kanji/Kana entry mode**
  Press key(s) assigned to alphanumerics as many times as it would take to enter same character(s) in Alphanumerics mode. For example, press 2 three times and press 3 once to enter "cd."
  ① In Kanji/Kana entry mode, press a key to which alphanumerics are assigned
  ② Press o (EngNumカナ)
  ③ Highlight alphanumeric conversion alternative and press c (Confirm)

Numbers

1 In Number entry mode, press number keys

To correct a misentry

Use C to delete the entry, then enter correction

Tip

- **To enter numbers in Kanji/Kana entry mode**
  ① In Kanji/Kana entry mode, press a key to which numbers are assigned
  ② Press o (EngNumカナ)
  ③ Highlight number conversion alternative and press c (Confirm)

Symbols, Pictograms, & Emoticons

1 In a text entry window, press # to toggle symbols

To toggle double-byte symbols and single-byte symbols

Press * while Suggestions for double-byte symbols and single-byte symbols appear

2 Highlight target character and press C

To enter symbols, pictograms, or emoticons successively

Press W (Continue)

Tip

- **To enter symbols, pictograms, or emoticons in Kanji/Kana entry mode**
  Enter hiragana like てん and press W (Convert), symbols
  ・and … appear among conversion alternatives.
  Similarly, convert はーと or でんわ to pictograms and わーい or えーん to emoticons.

Line Breaks

Enter a line break the same way in all text entry modes.

1 **In a text entry window, press * **

Quoting Saved Text

Using Phonebook Entries

In a text entry window, use *Phonebook* via *Options* to search saved entries for inserting phone numbers or mail addresses into message text.

1 **In message text, select *Options* → *Phonebook***

2 **Select an entry and open details**

3 **Highlight an item and press C (Select)**

SMS Template

In a text entry window, use *SMS template* via *Options* to quote saved text in SMS.

Save frequently used words/phrases as SMS templates beforehand (➲P.4-16).

1 **In message text, select *Options* → *SMS template***

2 **Select a template**

Using Template

In a text entry window, use *Templates* via *Options* to save ".ne.jp" or "http://www" in Phonebook for one keystroke entry.

1 **In message text, select *Options* → *Templates***

2 **Select an item**

Hangul

Select Hangul entry mode to enter Hangul characters.

1 **In a text entry window, press e and select *Hangul***

2 **Press number keys to enter assigned character units that appear; combine several consonants and vowels**

Consonant Example (Key Assignment)					
ㄱ	4 (once)	ㄲ	4 (twice)	ㄳ	4 (three times)

Vowel Example (Key Assignment)			
ㅐ	0 1 (ㅣ), 2 (·)	ㅙ	0 1 2 2
ㅔ	0 2 (·), 1 (ㅣ)	ㅞ	0 2 2 1
ㅚ	0 2 (·), 3 (ㅡ)	ㅟ	0 2 2 3
ㅢ	0 2 (·), 3 (ㅡ), 1 (ㅣ), 2 (·), 1 (ㅣ)		

Editing Text

Deleting

1 **Highlight character to delete and press C**

When a space is highlighted

The character before cursor is deleted.

To delete all text on/after cursor

Press C for 1+ seconds

To delete all text

Place cursor at the end of text and press C for 1+ seconds

Copy/Cut, Paste, & Undo

Copy/Cut

Select a range of characters to copy/cut. Paste copied/cut characters repeatedly to other locations.

1. **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Copy* or *Cut***
2. **Use a to highlight the first character in the range and press c (Start)**

   To copy/cut all

   Press o (All)
3. **Use a to specify range and press c (End)**

Tip

- **To copy text from Phonebook entries or My Phonebook Details**
  Select *Options* → *Copy item* (➔P.5-14, 5-17)
- **When copy/cut items**
  Up to 10 copied/cut items can be saved. The contents remains even after turning power off. With 10 items already saved, oldest items are automatically deleted.

Paste

1. **Use a to move cursor to paste location**
2. **Select *Options* → *Paste***
3. **Select an item to paste and press c (Select)**

Tip

- **To delete copied/cut items**
  In Step 3, highlight item to delete, press W (Delete) and select *Yes*.

Undo

Undo operations immediately after performing such as Cut, Paste, or Delete. Alternatively, undo converting operations immediately after character conversion; this operation can be performed in Kanji/Kana entry mode only.

1 **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Undo***

Jump

1 **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Jump* → *Top* or *End***

Prediction On/Off (Japanese Only)

Select to show/hide Japanese kana conversion alternatives in Suggestions.

Default Setting	■On

1 **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Prediction On* or *Prediction Off***

Learning On/Off (Japanese Only)

Default Setting	■On

Select to keep record or not for entered character strings by Suggestions.

1 **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Learning On* or *Learning Off***

Font Size

Default Setting	■Large

Change font size for SMS, S! Mail, or template text; available sizes vary.

1 **In message text, select *Options* → *Font Size***

User Dictionary (Japanese Only)

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 20 characters; entries appear in Suggestions when key characters are entered.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *New entry***

2 **Select Word field and enter text**

3 **Select Reading field and enter key characters**

4 **Press W (Save)**

Tip

- **To edit User Dictionary entries**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Edit entry*
  ② Select contents to edit
  ③ Edit a word or readings and press W (Save)
- **To delete one item**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Edit entry*
  ② Highlight item to delete, select *Options* → *Delete*
- **To delete all items**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *User dictionary* → *Delete all*
  ② Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Saving to User Dictionary

1 **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Word registration***

2 **Use a to move cursor to the first character, press c (Start)**

To display User Dictionary window for checking the saved contents, etc.
Press o (UserDic)

3 **Use a to set the range, press c (End)**

4 **Select Reading field and enter reading**

5 **Press w (Save)**

Tip

- **When the range containing line break**
  Character string before line break is saved as the dictionary word.
- **To edit User dictionary**
  Press o (UserDic) to select start point for Word registration; operations in "User Dictionary (Japanese Only)" (➲P.4-15) can be performed. Select *Edit entry* and registered entries appear.

SMS Templates

Save frequently used words/phrases of up to 70 characters.

1 **Press w ( ) and select *Templates* → *SMS templates***

2 **Select *Options* → *Add new***

When no SMS templates have been saved
Press w (Add new)

3 **Press c (Select) and enter text**

4 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **To use an SMS template (➔P.4-11)**
- **To edit an SMS template**
  ① Press w ( ) and select *Templates* → *SMS templates*
  ② Highlight an item to edit and press c (Edit)
  ③ Press c (Select) and edit the text
  ④ Press w (Save)
- **To delete an SMS template**
  ① Press w ( ) and select *Templates* → *SMS templates*
  ② Highlight an item to delete, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

  To delete all SMS templates, in Step b , select *Delete* → *All*, enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) and select *Yes*. To delete multiple items, select *Delete* → *Multiple* in Step ②, check items to delete, press w (Delete) and select *Yes*.

Phonebook

Saving to Phonebook

Phonebook Entry Items

Save phone numbers, mail addresses, and more for up to 1,000 entries in Phonebook; USIM Card Phonebook capacity varies by card. Insert USIM Card into compatible SoftBank handsets to use USIM Card Phonebook entries.

Each 708SC Phonebook entry contains the items listed below.

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		708SC	USIM Card
Entry Number	a 3-digit number	Yes (000-999)[1]	Yes (000-0XX)[2]
Name	Single-/double-byte characters	Yes (Up to 50 characters)	Yes[3]
Reading	Single-byte characters	Yes	Yes[3]
Phone Icon	Select one of six icons	Yes (Six Icons)	No
Phone Number	Saved with area code	Yes (5 of up to 40 digits each)	Yes[2 3]
Email	Single-byte alphanumerics	Yes (4 of up to 256 characters each)	Yes[3] (1 address)
Email Icon	Select one of three icons	Yes	No
Category	Select one of twenty categories	Yes	Yes[2]
Caller ID	Select incoming call image from Data Folder	Yes	No

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		708SC	USIM Card
Call Notice	Select incoming call ringtone from Data Folder	Yes	No
Message Notice	Select incoming S! Mail/SMS ringtone from Data Folder	Yes	No
Blood Type	Select one of four blood types	Yes	No
Birthday	Enter the party's date of birth	Yes	No
Address	Enter up to 20 single-byte characters for postal code and up to 50 for address	Yes	No
Hobby	Up to 100 characters	Yes	No
URL	Up to 100 single-byte alphanumerics	Yes (2 URLs)	No

Item	Description	Availability (Quantity)	
		708SC	USIM Card
URL Icon	Select one of three icons	Yes	No
Notes	Up to 100 characters	Yes	No
Secret Mode	Select secret setting	Yes	No

1 Use speed dialing (➔P.5-12) to initiate a Voice Call to phone numbers with memory Nos. 000 to 099 in Phonebook of handset.
2 The number of items that can be saved varies by the type of USIM Card.
3 The number of characters that can be saved varies by the type of USIM Card.

Note

- **Protect important information**
  Phonebook entry information may be altered or deleted when battery is removed or left uncharged for an extended period. Accidents or malfunctions may also affect Phonebook entries. Back-up Phonebook entry information and store separately. SoftBank is not be liable for damages resulting lost information.

Adding Entry Items

708SC assigns lowest available Entry Number; edit as required.

Phonebook Details

1 Select *Options* → *Add to* → *Phone* or *USIM*

2 Enter additional items as required

*Not available in USIM Card Phonebook.

To change Entry number

Highlight Entry number field and enter a number

To save Name

①Select Name field

②Enter a name

To modify Reading Name

①Select Reading Name field

②Enter a reading name (use katakana to organize entries in Phonebook list)

To save Phone number

Highlight Phone number field and enter a number

To set Phone icon

①Select Phone number field

②Select an icon

To save Mail address

①Select Mail address field

②Enter an address

③Select an icon

To set Category

①Select Category field

②Select a Category

To set Caller ID for a Voice Call or Video Call*

①Select Caller ID field

②Select *On*

③Open Data Folder to select an image file, etc.

To set Call notice for a Voice Call or Video Call*

①Select Call notice field

②Select *On*

③Open Data Folder to select a file

To set S! Mail/SMS Notice*

①Select Message notice field

②Select *On*

③Select sound

To save Blood type*

①Select Blood type field

②Select blood Type

To save Birthday*

Highlight Birthday field and enter a date

To save Address*

①Select Address field

②Enter a postal code

③Select Address field and enter an address

④Press w (OK)

To save Hobby*

①Select Hobby field

②Enter text

To save URL*

①Select URL field

②Enter a URL

③Select an icon

To save Memo*

①Select Notes field

②Enter text

To set Secret Mode*

①Select Secret Mode field

②Select *On*

3 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **Phone number field characters**
  Save 0-9, #, *, P (Pause), and + (International Code) in Phone field. Press * for 1+ seconds to enter P or press 0 for 1+ seconds to enter +.
- **To save after entering a phone number**
  Alternatively, during a call, select *Options* → *Add to Phonebook*.
  ① In Standby, enter a phone number
  ② Select *Options* → *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM*
  ③ Select *New* or *Update* and select memory location for saving the information
  ④ Select the phone icon
  ⑤ Perform Steps 2 and 3
- **Synchronizing Phonebook with Samsung PC Studio**
  The entries with Secret Mode *On* cannot be synchronized regardless of Secret Mode settings (cannot be back-upped to PC).
  The entries with Secret Mode changed from *Off* to *On*, cannot be synchronized and deleted immediately after the Secret Mode settings has been changed and tried synchronization.
  For more information about Samsung PC Studio, see the User's guide in the attached CD-ROM.

Saving from Call Log Records

Save numbers from Call Log records to new or existing Phonebook entries.

1 **Press r**

2 **Use s to open a Call Log, highlight a record, select *Options* → *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM***

3 **Select Phonebook entry type**

To create a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

①Select *Update*

②Open the Phonebook entry (➔P.5-9)

4 **Select a phone icon**

5 **Enter additional items as required**

6 **Press w (Save)**

Category Settings

Organize Phonebook entries among twenty Categories.

New Category (USIM Card)

1 **Press c and select *Phonebook***

2 **Select *Options* → *View from USIM***

3 **Press w (Search) and select *Category search***

4 **Select *Options* → *New category***

5 **Enter a name**

Edit Category

Customize Category names, add Category image/ringtones to appear and sound for incoming calls/messages from Category members.

1 Press c and select *Phonebook*

To select a USIM Card Category

After Step 1, select *Options* → *View from USIM*

2 Press w (Search) and select *Category search*

3 Highlight category to change, select *Options* → *Category settings*

4 Edit Category items

To change Category name

Select Category name field and enter a name

To set Category image

Select Category image field then select a file from Data Folder

To set incoming call ringtone

Select Call notice field then select a file from Data Folder

To set incoming S! Mail/SMS notice

Select Message notice field then select a ringtone

To restore Category defaults

Highlight item to restore and press o (Reset)

5 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **Incoming image & ringtone priority**
  Images and ringtones set for individual Phonebook entries take priority over those set for a Category.

Add Member

1 **Press c and select *Phonebook***

To select Category on USIM Card

After Step 1, select *Options* → *View from USIM*

2 **Press w *Search* and select *Category search***

3 **Select Category to which to add member**

4 **Select *Options* → *Add member***

5 **Check the member to add and press w (Add)**

Tip

- **To delete a member from a Category**

  Deleting a member from a Category does not affect member's Phonebook entry.

  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2 in "Add Member"
  ② Select Category from which to delete member
  ③ Highlight member to delete, select *Options* → *Remove* → *Yes*

Using Phonebook

Calling from Phonebook

Phonebook Search

1 **Press d**

If the correct search method appears first

Proceed to Step 2, Part b

To change method from an active search window

Press c and proceed to Step 2

2 Press w (Search)

To search Phonebook list

①Select *Phonebook list*

②Use s to navigate Phonebook list

To search by Category

①Select *Category search*

②Select Category

To search by name

①Select *Name search*

②Enter any part of Name

To search by Reading

①Select *Reading search*

②Enter any part of Reading

To search by Entry Number

①Select *Entry No. search*

②Enter Entry Number

To search by Phone Number

①Select *Phone No. search*

②Enter any part of a phone number

To search by Mail Address

①Select *Email search*

②Enter any part of an mail address

3 Select an entry

To open Entry details

Press c (Details/Select)

Tip

- **To set Phonebook appearance preference (Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook)**
  ① Press c and select *Settings* → *Phonebook settings* → *View phonebook from*
  ② Select *Phone memory* or *USIM memory* and press c (Save)
- **While Secret Mode is set to *Hide***
  Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *On*, these Phonebook entries do not appear. To search these entries, set Secret Mode to *Show*.

Initiating a Call

1 Select an entry, press c (Details) to view Details window

Entry Details

2 Select a number and initiate a call

To initiate a Voice Call

Press c or select *Options* → *Voice call*

To initiate a Video Call

Select *Options* → *Video call*

Tip

- **To place a call from Phonebook list**
  Highlight an entry, select *Options* → *Voice call* or *Video call*. When entry contains multiple numbers, Default Number is dialed if set; otherwise, first number listed is dialed. If Default Number is *Not assigned*, Call window appears; select a number.

Calling from Simple Search and search result

When *Simple search* is set to *On* (➔P.15-7), enter numbers to search and display entry name/phone number; this search for entries starting with *Reading name* corresponding to the entered number. Highlight a phone number, press t or c (Select) → c (Call) to initiate a Voice Call; select *Options* → *Video call* to call a Video Call.

Calling from phone number search and search result

Enter 4-digit number to search and display entry name/phone number; this search for entries contains the entered number at the first/last part of the entry. When *Simple search* is set to *On* and any entry searched, press s to switch the search result between phone number search and *Simple search*. Highlight a phone number, press t or c (Select) → c (Call) to initiate a Voice Call; select *Options* → *Video call* to call a Video Call.

Calling USIM Card Phonebook Entries

Use Entry Numbers as shortcuts to call numbers saved in the first 100 USIM Card Phonebook entries.

1 Enter the last two digits of an Entry Number

2 Press #

If the correct entry is not highlighted

Use j to highlight it

3 Press w (Call)

To initiate a Video Call

Press o (V-Call)

Change Search Method

Default Setting	■Phonebook list

Set to display specified search window when pressed d in Standby.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Phonebook settings* → *Search type*

2 Select the setting and press c (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of search method settings are:**
  Phonebook list: Press d in Standby, shows list window.
  Other settings: Set each search type window appears.

Speed Dialing

Enter the last two digits of an Entry Number to call the Voice Call Default Number in Phonebook entries 000 - 099.

1 Enter the last two digits of an Entry Number

2 Press C ( )

Tip

- **When *Simple search* is set to *On***
  Enter number to show Simple search result (entry names and phone numbers) appears. After 5 seconds, Simple search result disappears. appeared (Center Key area) enables Speed dialing.

Note

- **Speed Dialing is invalid for an entry if Voice Call Default Number (➔P.5-14) is set to *Not assigned*.**
- **While Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *On*; these Phonebook entry numbers cannot be used for Speed Dialing.**

Phonebook Options

Use the following options in Phonebook List or Entry details.

Item	Description
Add to[1]	Start the process of saving a new entry.
Voice call	Initiate a Voice Call to the highlighted number or Default Number (➔P.5-10).
Video call	Initiate a Video Call to the highlighted number or Default Number (➔P.5-10).

Item	Description
Create message	Open a new message addressed to the number saved as an entry (➲P.17-6).
Send	Send entry as a vFile; select *Via message*, to open a new message with entry attached (➲P.17-6), or *Via bluetooth*, to send entry to another device wirelessly (➲P.12-6).
Delete	Delete an entry (➲P.5-15).
Save to Data Folder	Create a vFile and save it to *Other documents* in Data Folder.
Copy to USIM/ Copy to phone	(➲P.5-15)
View from USIM/View from Phone[1]	Toggle between Phonebook and USIM Phonebook.
International dial	Add international code and country code to the number (➲P.2-2).

Item	Description
Hide/Show my ID	Initiate a Voice/Video Call with your number Shown/Hidden. Select *None* to follow Caller ID settings. Select *Show my ID* to show your number. Select *Hide my ID* to hide your number.
Print via Bluetooth	Print highlighted Entry details (name, phone number information) using the printer via Bluetooth® connection.
Memory status[1]	Check memory usage.
Copy item[2]	Copy highlighted entry item.
Mark default number[2]	(➲P.5-14)

1 This item does not appear in Entry details.
2 This item does not appear in Phonebook list.

Editing Phonebook Entries

To search, list or Entry details, see "Phonebook Search" (➲P.5-9).

When editing Phonebook entries with Phonebook Secret Mode *On*, set Secret Mode to *Show*.

Edit

1 Open Entry details

2 Press W (Edit)

3 Edit entry items and press W (Save)

Default Number

Default Setting	■ Voice call: First phone number ■ Video call: First phone number ■ Message: *Not assigned*

When a Phonebook entry contains multiple phone numbers/mail addresses, set calling/messaging priorities by assigning to Default Number.

Resetting an item changes it to *Not assigned*.

1 Open Entry details

2 Select *Options* → *Mark default number*

3 Set or reset options

To set

①Select *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *Message*

②Select a phone number or mail address

To reset
Highlight *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *Message* and press o (Reset)

4 **Press w (Save)**

Copy to USIM/Copy to Phone

1 **Highlight entry or open Entry details**

2 **Copy the entry**

To copy from Phonebook to USIM Card Phonebook
Select *Options* → *Copy to USIM* → *Selected* or *All* → *Yes*

To copy from USIM Card Phonebook to Phonebook
Select *Options* → *Copy to phone* → *Selected* or *All*

Deleting Entries

Deleting a Single Entry

1 **Highlight entry or open Entry details**

2 **Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes***

Deleting Multiple Entries at Once

1 **Highlight entries**

To select Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook
Select *Options* → *View from Phone* or *View from USIM*

2 **Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple***

3 **Check an entry to delete**

4 **Repeat Step 3 to check all target entries**

5 **Press w (Delete) and proceed to Step 7 when all are not checked**

6 **Enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm)**

7 **Select *Yes***

Deleting All Entries at Once

Delete all Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook entries.

1 **Highlight entries**

To move between Phonebook and USIM Card Phonebook

Select *Options* → *View from USIM* or *View from Phone*

2 **Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All***

3 **Enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) → *Yes***

My Phonebook Details

Confirm handset phone number. Add your name, mail address, street address, and other information.

1 **Press c and Press 0**

To enter or edit other items

①Press w (Edit)

②Enter or edit items following the same procedures for Phonebook items; when finished, then press w (Save)

Options

Item	Description
Send my phonebook details	Send as a vFile; select *Via message* to create a message with vFile attached (➔P.17-6), or *Via Bluetooth* to send vFile wirelessly (➔P.12-6).
Delete	Delete owner info except numbers on USIM Card.
Save to Data Folder	Create a vFile and save it to *Other documents* in Data Folder.
Copy item	Copy highlighted entry item.
Print via Bluetooth	Print My phonebook details (name, phone number information) using the printer via Bluetooth® connection.

Video Call

Before Using Video Calls

Exchange voice and video via Video Call-compatible 3G handsets.

You may choose not to send your own image (➲P.6-6).

Video Call Precautions

- Calls to incompatible handsets may be disconnected; charges apply.
- It may be difficult to use Speaker Phone with earpiece volume raised; lower volume or use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Ambient noise may hamper voice quality; use Stereo Earphone Microphone.
- Using Speaker Phone in public may disturb other; please mind your manners.

Initiating a Video Call

Dial directly or from Phonebook entries or Call Log records.

1 Enter a phone number

2 Select *Options* → *Video call*

3 Press y to end the call

Tip

- **Engaged Video Call Operations (➲P.6-3)**

When Video Call cannot be connected

Unavailable for a video call... appears; select *Options* → *Voice call* or *Create message* to contact the recipient, or *View contact details* to open Phonebook. Select *Add to Phonebook* to save the receiver's number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook.

Initiating a Call (➲P.2-3)

Receiving a Video Call

1 When 708SC rings/vibrates, press c (Accept)

***Loudspeaker on?* appears;**

Select *Yes* or *No*

Allow own picture to be shown? **appears;**

Select *Yes* or *No*

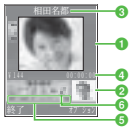
2 Press y to end the call

Tip

- **To adjust ringtone volume**
  While 708SC is ringing, press n or b .
- **When a Stereo Earphone Microphone is connected**
  Press Stereo Earphone Microphone switch for 1+ seconds to answer video calls. Press for 1+ seconds to end a Video Call.
- **To disconnect a Video Call without answering it**
  Press o (Busy)
- **To change or cancel outgoing image**
  Set 708SC to send Substitute Image beforehand (➲P.6-6).
  Alternatively, change to Substitute Image during a call (➲P.6-6).
- **Send Your Image or Substitute Image during a Video Call**
  After Step 1, Your Image appears. When confirmation appears, select *Yes* or *No* to send Your Image or Substitute Image. When Video Call connects Your Image or Substitute Image appears.
- **Engaged Video Call Operations (➲P.6-5)**

Engaged Video Call Operations

Perform operations from Video Call Menu or *Options*.



1. Large Display (Normally, the other party's image)
2. Small Display (Normally, your image)
3. The other party's name or phone number
4. Call duration
5. Meaning of the icon at cursor position
6. Video Call Menu Icons

/ : Toggle Speaker Phone Off/On

: Toggle Incoming Image Size

/ : Freeze or unfreeze outgoing image

(Blue)/ (Gray): Toggle Your Image and Substitute Image

/ : Freeze or unfreeze incoming image

: Flip image

1 During Video Calls, select Video Call Menu or *Options* to adjust Video Call settings

To toggle Speaker Phone off/on

Highlight / and press C

To select incoming image size

Highlight and press C to select an item

To freeze or unfreeze outgoing image

Highlight / and press C

To toggle Your Image and Substitute Image

Highlight (Blue/Gray) and press C

To freeze or unfreeze incoming image

Highlight / and press C

To flip outgoing image

Highlight and press c

To cancel Your Image/mic/key tones

①Select *Options* → *Mute*

②Check item(s) to cancel and press w (Save)

When Camera (Your Image) is canceled, Substitute Image is sent.

To adjust outgoing image appearance/quality

①Select *Options* → *Display options* → *Effects* or *Quality*

②Highlight an item and press c

To adjust outgoing image brightness

①Select *Options* → *Display options* → *Brightness*

②Use s to adjust brightness

Tip

- **To adjust earpiece volume**
  Press j during a Video Call.
- **To enlarge or reduce outgoing image**
  Press n or b during a Video Call.
- **When outgoing image is canceled**
  708SC send caller Substitute Image.

Engaged Video Call Options

Item	Description
Normal/Speaker on	Toggle Speaker Phone off/on (➲P.6-4).
Mute	Cancel sending outgoing image/ mic/key tones (➲P.6-4).
Display options	Adjust outgoing image appearance/quality (➲P.6-4).
Settings	Select Video Call settings (➲P.6-5).
Phonebook	Open Phonebook Search window.

Item	Description
Add to Phonebook	Save number to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➲P.5-7).
Send DTMF	Send push tones.
Memo	Create and save text memos (➲P.14-10).
Details	Open Phonebook Entry details.
Switch to headset/ Switch to phone	Appears when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is in use. Select headset or phone (handset).

Video Call Settings

Sending Your Image

Default Setting ■Always ask

When *Always ask* is set, Choose between Your Image or Substitute Image as outgoing image each time a Video Call is received.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Show my picture***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Selecting a Substitute Image

Default Setting ■Camera Off

Select an image to use as the outgoing image (in place of Your Image).

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Select still picture***

2 **Press C (Change)**

3 **Open Data Folder, select a file and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **To restore Substitute Image to its default**
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Select any image file in Data Folder → *Options* → *Reset*

Retry Settings

Default Setting	■Always ask

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings*→ *Video call* → *Retry with*

2 Select the setting and press C (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of *Retry with* are:**
  Always ask: Select an action from *Options*.
  Voice call: Choose whether or not to redial number as a Voice Call.
  Messages: Choose whether or not to create a message.
  None: Return to Standby after a failed Video Call. Automatic retry option changes by the setting.

Voice Mute

Default Setting	■Off

Set *Voice mute* to *On* to answer Video Calls with no sound sending to caller.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Video call* → *Voice mute*

2 Select *On* and press C (Save)

Tip

- **To send sound**
  ① During a Video Call, select *Options* → *Mute*
  ② Uncheck *Voice*
  ③ Press w (Save)

Mobile Camera

Before Using Mobile Camera

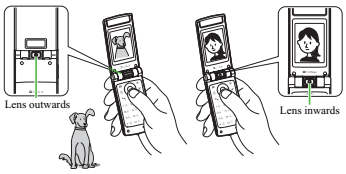
Capture still images in JPEG format or video in 3GP format.

Mobile Camera Precautions

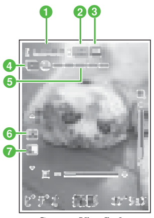
- Use a dry soft cloth to remove debris from camera lens.
- Avoid camera shake; hold 708SC steady or place it on a stable surface and use Timer.
- Mobile Camera employs high precision technology, however, some pixels may seem brighter or darker than others.
- Leaving 708SC in a hot place for an extended period before image capture/save may affect image quality.
- Exposing camera lens to direct sunlight may affect color filter.

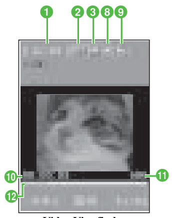
708SC Camera

708SC has rotating camera. Capture still images/videos with rotating Camera lens inwards/outwards to suit various situations. Images/videos may appear upside down on Display by Camera lens direction. Use n to display images/videos in the normal position.



Using Display as Viewfinder


Camera Viewfinder


Video Viewfinder

1 Size

2 Quality

: Superfine : Fine
: Normal : Low
: Economy

3 White Balance

: Auto : Fine : Cloudy
: Incandescent : Fluorescent

4 Mode

No display : Single shot
: Multi-shot (6 shots) : Multi-shot (9 shots)
: Multi-shot (15 shots)
: Mosaic shot (2 x 2) : Mosaic shot (3 x 3)

5 Timer (When set)

: 3 seconds
: 5 seconds
: 10 seconds

6 Display Position (Top & Bottom)

: Normal display when lens outwards
: Normal display when lens inwards

7 Display Position (Left & Right)

: Normal image
: Mirror image

8 Audio Recording

: On : Off

9 Recording Time

: Limit for S! Mail : 10 seconds
: 30 seconds : Normal recording

⑩ **Elapsed Recording Time**
⑪ **Total Data Size/Recording Time**
⑫ **Progress Bar**

Capturing a Still Image

Camera Mode

Select *Single shot* to capture single images, *Multishot* or *Mosaic shot* to capture multiple images. Save images in Pictures.

Mode	Description	Image size
Single shot	Capture single images, select size for purpose; attach images to S! Mail, save as Wallpaper, etc.	1600 x 1200 1280 x 960 640 x 480 320 x 240 240 x 320 240 x 192
Multi-shot	Press shutter once to capture 6, 9 or 15 sequential images.	320 x 240
Mosaic shot	Capture multiple images, one at a time; 708SC automatically combines single images (4 for *2 x 2* or 9 for *3 x 3*) into one composite image.	240 x 192

Tip

- **When using Single shot mode with a flame**
  Image size is automatically adjusted to 240 x 192.

Capturing Still Images

Single Shot

1 Press e

In Video mode

Press w (Photos) to change to Camera mode

2 Select *Options* → *Shooting mode* → *Single shot* → *Take & save*

To save captured images without review

Select *Automatic save*

3 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (➲P.7-6)

4 Preview image on Display

Zoom image preview in/out (invalid for 1600 x 1200)

Use u or d to zoom out or in

Adjust brightness

Use r or l to lighten or darken image

5 Press c (Take)

To cancel the image and capture another

Press w (Back)

Tip

- **To activate/adjust Timer in image preview**
  Press 5 to toggle *3 seconds*, *5 seconds*, *10 seconds*, and *Off*.
- **To adjust viewfinder in image preview**
  Press # to toggle *Full screen*, *Actual ratio*, *Full screen without indicator*, and *Full screen with grid*.
- **To send an image via S! Mail or Bluetooth®**
  ① After Step 5, press c (Send) and select send medium
  ② Send image (➲P.12-6, 17-6)

Preview Options

Available options may vary by mode and other settings.

Item	Description
Shooting mode	Select Shooting mode and save setting for *Single shot*, or image count for *Multi-shot* or *Mosaic shot* (➔P.7-5, 7-9).
Effects	Select *Black & White*, *Sepia* or *Negative* effects filters. When an effect is active, select *None* to cancel.
Frames	Add a frame to image in Single shot mode.
Timer	Activate self-timer (➔P.7-5).
Go to photos	Open Pictures folder.
Camera settings	Select image size, image quality, etc. (➔P.7-13).
Camera shortcuts	Open a function shortcuts graphic (➔P.7-10).

Review Options

Item	Description
Delete	Delete the last image captured.
Set as	Set image for Wallpaper, Phonebook entries, or Substitute Image.
Edit photo	Edit an image in Pictures folder (➔P.7-15).
Dynamic Effect	Create Flash images using Still images (➔P.7-19).
Rename	Change file name.
mPostcard	Create a mobile postcard (➔P.7-7).
Go to photos	Open Pictures folder.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size or format.

Mobile Postcard

Use *Single shot*, *Multi-shot*, or *Mosaic shot* images. This function renders one of two images as line art, merging it with the other to create a stamped photograph.

1 Capture an image (P.7-5, 7-8)

2 Select *Options* → *mPostcard*

3 Press c (Add)

4 Add a second image

To select a still image from Data Folder

①Select *Open*

②Open Data Folder and select an image file

To capture an image

①Select *Take photo*

②Press c (Take)

③Press c (Add)

5 Press c (Merge) and check the merged result

To change image

①Press C

②Highlight image to change, select *Options* → *Change image*

③Repeat Steps 4 and 5

To swap image positions

①Press C

②Select *Options* → *Swap image*

③Perform Step 5

6 To edit line art, press o (Edit)

To change line art position

①Select *Options* → *Move*

②Use a to move image and press w (Done)

To change line art size

①Select *Options* → *Size*

②Use j to adjust image and press w (Done)

To rotate line art

①Select *Options* → *Rotate*

②Use s to rotate image and press w (Done)

To change line art color

①Select *Options* → *Change colour*

②Use s to select color and press w (Done)

To adjust line art shadow

①Select *Options* → *Shadow on* or *Shadow off*

②Press w (Done)

7 Press w (Save) and enter a file name

To save and send image

①Press c (S & S)

②Select medium and send (➲P.12-6, 17-6)

Multi Shot

1 Press e

In Video mode

Press w (Photos) to change Camera mode

2 Select *Options* → *Shooting mode* → *Multi-shot* and select the number of images to capture

3 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (➲P.7-6)

4 Preview image on Display

Zoom in/out

Use u or d to enlarge or reduce image

Adjust brightness

Use r or l to lighten or darken image

5 Press c (Take)

6 View captured still image(s)

To view still images individually

①Highlight the image and press c (View)

②Press C

To retake a still image

Press w (Back)

Mosaic Shot

1 Press e

In Video mode

Press w (Photos) to change Camera mode

2 Select *Options* → *Shooting mode* → *Mosaic shot* to select the number of images to capture

3 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (☞P.7-6)

4 Preview image on Display

Zoom in/out

Use u or d to zoom in or out

Adjust brightness

Use r or l to brighten or darken image

5 Press c (Take) for each image

6 View captured still images

Mosaic Mode (2 x 2)

To retake an image

Press w (Back)

Shortcut Key Operations

Change the settings by pressing the key assigned to each item.
Available shortcuts vary by mode or setting status.

Key	Item	Description
1	Size	1600 x 1200, 1280 x 960, 640 x 480, 320 x 240, 240 x 320, 240 x 192
2	Quality	Superfine, Fine, Normal, Low, Economy
3	Shooting mode	Single shot, Multi-shot (6, 9, 15 shots), Mosaic shot (2 x 2, 3 x 3)
4	White balance	Auto, Fine, Cloudy, Incandescent, Fluorescent
5	Timer	3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
6	Frames	Select from 9 types
7	Effects	Black & White, Sepia, Negative
0	Photo album	-
#	Screen mode	Toggle Full screen, Actual ratio, Full screen without indicator, Full screen with grid
w	Mode switch	-
n	Vertical inverse	-
b	Horizontal inverse	-
j	Zoom	-
s	Brightness	-

Capturing Video

Video Mode

Capture videos suitable for attaching to mail or saving as a record.

Alternatively, capture videos without sound.
Captured video is saved in 3GP format to the Videos folder of Data Folder.

Capturing Video

1 Press e

In Camera mode

Press w (Videos) to open Video mode

2 Select *Options* and perform other actions as required (➲P.7-11)

3 Preview image on Display

Zoom in/out

Use u or d to enlarge or reduce image

Adjust brightness

Use r or l to lighten or darken image

4 Press c (Record)

5 Press c (Save) and end

After recording time elapses

Capturing automatically ends and captured video is saved automatically.

6 Press c (Play) to view captured video

To continue capturing

Press w (Back)

Tip

- **To activate/adjust Timer when capturing**
  In image preview, press 5 to toggle *3 seconds*, *5 seconds*, *10 seconds*, *Off*.

Preview Options

Item	Description
Effects	Select *Black & White*, *Sepia*, or *Negative* effects filters. When an effect is active, select *None* to cancel.
Timer	Activate self-timer (➲P.7-11).
Go to videos	Open Videos folder.
Video settings	Select image size, image quality, etc. (➲P.7-14).
Camcorder shortcuts	Open a function shortcuts graphic (➲P.7-12).

Review Options

Item	Description
Edit	Edit Video files in Data Folder (P.7-17).
Resolution	Select video display size while playing or paused.
Send	Send file via S! Mail (➲P.17-6) or Bluetooth® (➲P.12-6).
Set as	Set captured videos as Voice ringtone or Video ringtone.
Delete	Delete the last video captured.
Rename	Change file name.
Go to videos	Open Videos folder.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size or format.

Shortcut Key Operations

Change the settings by pressing the key assigned to each item.

Key	Item	Description
1	Size	320 x 240, 176 x 144, 128 x 96
2	Quality	Fine, Normal, Low, Economy
3	Shooting time	Limit for S! Mail, 10 seconds, 30 seconds, Normal recording
4	White balance	Auto, Fine, Cloudy, Incandescent, Fluorescent
5	Timer	3 seconds, 5 seconds, 10 seconds
6	Audio recording	On, Off
7	Effects	Black & White, Sepia, Negative
0	Record album	-
w	Mode switch	-
n	Vertical inverse	-
b	Horizontal inverse	-
j	Zoom	-
s	Brightness	-

Mobile Camera Settings

Make settings related to image capturing including the size, image quality, save location, etc. of images.

Camera Settings

Default Setting	■Size: 240 x 320 ■Quality: Normal ■Viewfinder: Full screen ■Shutter sound: Shutter 1 ■Multi-shot speed: High ■Single shot mode: Take & save ■White balance: Auto ■Default name: Photo

1 Press e

In Video mode

Press w (Photos) to change to Camera mode

2 Select *Options* → *Camera settings*

3 Select an item and perform operations to set

To set image size

①Select *Size*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set image quality

①Select *Quality*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set Viewfinder

①Select *Viewfinder*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set the shutter sound

①Select *Shutter sound*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set sequential shot speed

①Select *Multi-shot speed*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set the Single shot mode

①Select *Single shot mode*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set white balance

①Select *White balance*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set file name

①Select *Default name*

②Enter file name

Video Settings

Default Setting	■ Recording time: Limit for S! Mail ■ Size: 176 x 144 ■ Quality: Economy ■ Audio recording: On ■ Default name: Video

1 Press e

In Camera mode

Press w (Videos) to change to Video mode

2 Select *Options* → *Video settings*

3 Select an item and adjust settings

To set duration

①Select *Recording time*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set size

①Select *Size*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set image quality

①Select *Quality*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set voice recording

①Select *Audio recording*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set file name

①Select *Default name*

②Enter file name

Tip

- **Video recording time**
  When the recording time is set to *Normal recording*, video with maximum of approximately one hour can be recorded in ordinary mode.
- **When *Recording time* is set to *Limit for S! Mail***
  Unable to set *Size with 320 x 240*; Quality is automatically set to *Economy*, and cannot be changed.

Viewing Images

View images/video clips saved in Data Folder.

Viewing Still Images

1 **Press e**

In Video mode

Press w (Photos) to change Camera mode

2 **Select *Options* → *Go to photos***

3 **Highlight a file and press c (View)**

Viewing Videos

1 **Press e**

In Camera mode

Press w (Videos) to change to Video mode

2 **Select *Options* → *Go to videos***

3 **Highlight and select a file and press c (Play)**

Editing Still Images

Edit image files saved in Data Folder.

1 **Press c , select *Data folder* and select an image to edit**

2 **Highlight a file and press c (View)**

3 **Press c (Edit)**

4 Edit using *Options*

To change the size of an image

①Select *Resize*

②Select the setting

③Enter *Width* or *Height* (If *Customise* is selected)

④Press w (Done)

To add effects to an image

①Select *Effects*

②Select the setting

③Press w (Done)

To add blur or correct red-eye

①Select *Partial effects* → *Partial blur* or *Redeye repair*

②Select *Options* and select the suitable operation

③Press w (Done)

To adjust an image

①Select *Adjust* → *Brightness*/*Contrast*/*Colour*

②Adjust the image

③Press w (Done)

To add a frame

①Select *Frames*

②Use s to select a frame

③Press w (Done)

To add clip art to an image

①Select *Cliparts*

②Select a piece of clip art to add to an image

③Select *Options* → *Size* and use j to adjust the clip art size

④Select *Options* → *Rotate* and use s to turn the clip art

⑤Select *Options* → *Move* and use a to move the clip art

⑥Press w (Done)

To add text to image (320 x 240 or above)

①Select *Insert text*

②Enter text

③Select *Options* → *Size* and use j to adjust the text size
④Select *Options* → *Rotate* and use s to turn the text
⑤Select *Options* → *Font size* → *Large*/*Normal*/*Small*
⑥Select *Options* → *Colour* and use a to adjust the text color
⑦Press w (Done)

To rotate image

①Select *Rotate*
②Select *90° R* or *90° L*
③Press w (Done)

To flip image

①Select *Flip*
②Select *Vertically* or *Horizontally*
③Press w (Done)

To crop image

①Select *Crop*
②Select *Options* → *Size* and use j to adjust the trimming size
③Select *Options* → *Shape* and use s to select the trimming shape
④Select *Options* → *Move* and use a to adjust the trimming position
⑤Select *Options* → *Crop*
⑥Press w (Done)

5 Press c (Save)

6 Enter a name for the image

Editing Videos

Edit Video files in Data Folder.

1 Press c , and select *Data Folder* → *Videos*

2 Highlight a file, select *Options* → *Edit*

3 Edit using *Options*

To cut video

①Select *Cut*

②Press c (Play)

③Press w (Start) at the start point

④Press w (End) at the End point

⑤To cancel and retry, press o (Reset) and repeat ② to ④

⑥Press w (Done)

To merge multiple videos

①Select *Merge*

②Check files to merge (Up to ten files)

③Repeat ② to check all target files

④Press w (Done)

⑤Press c (Merge)

To replace sound from other video/sound

①Select *Replace sound* → *From other video* or *From other sound*

②Press c (Open)

③Select a file and press w (Done)

4 Press c (Save)

5 Enter a file name

Tip

- **To confirm video before editing**
  Press w (Preview)
- **To add files to merge videos**
  ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," select *Options* → *Add*
  ② Perform ② to ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos"
- **To delete the file order for merging**
  ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," use s to highlight the file to delete
  ② Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Yes*
- **To change the file order for merging**
  ① After ⑤ in Step 3 in "To merge multiple videos," use s to highlight the file to move
  ② Select *Options* → *Change order*
  ③ Use s to highlight a personal folder or a file, highlight the file and press c

Create Flash®

Create Flash® images using still images saved in Pictures folder, already created Flash® images saved in Other documents folder, or still images previewed immediately after shooting; newly created Flash® images are saved to Other documents folder in Data Folder.

1 Press c and *Camera* → *Dynamic effect list*

2 Select files

3 Perform creation operations

To add frame to image

①Select (Frame)

②Select the frame

To add icon to image

①Select (Icon)

②Select the icon

③Select *Options* → *Size*, use j to adjust the size and press w (Done)

④Select *Options* → *Rotate* and use s to adjust the angle as required

⑤Use a to adjust the position and w (Done)

⑥Repeat ① to ⑤ to add more icons

To add text to image

①Select (Text)

②Enter text

③Select *Options* → *Font size* and adjust the size as required, and press w (Done)

④Select *Options* → *Font color* and use s to adjust the color as required, and press w (Done)

⑤Use a to adjust the position and w (Done)

⑥Use s to change scroll direction and press w (Done)

⑦ To add more text, select (Text), press c (Insert) and repeat ② to ⑦

To add watch on image

① Select (Watch)

② Select the watch

③ Press w (Done)

To reset image during editing

① Select (Reset)

② Select *Yes*

4 Press w (Save)

5 Enter an image name

Tip

- **To delete added frame/watch**
  ① After Step 2, select (Frame) or (Watch)
  ② Press w (Delete)
- **To delete added icon(s)/text(s)**
  ① After Step 2, select (Icon) or (Text)
  ② Use s to highlight more icons/texts to delete
  ③ Press w (Delete)
  ④ Press c (Done)
- **Available icon/text to add**
  Up to 5 icons/texts can be added.

- **To create Flash® images using images already saved in Data Folder**
  ① Highlight image saved in Data Folder and select *Options* → *Dynamic Effect*
  ② Perform Steps 1 to 3 (➲P.7-19) in "Create Flash®"

Note

- **Created Flash® images cannot be sent as message.**

Attaching Images to a Message

Attach captured image or recorded video and send via S! Mail.

1 After capturing, press C (Send) → *As message*

To send video

In image review, select *Options* → *Send* → *As message*

2 Enter an address, subject, text, etc., and send

Tip

- **To send a still image or video via Bluetooth®**
  Select *Via bluetooth* in Step 1 (➲P.12-6).

Display Settings

Standby Display Settings

Wallpaper

Default Setting	■Pictures

Set *Pictures* that displays the saved still images or animations, or *Photo slide* that displays still images one by one, or *mPet world image*. Set to hide still image.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Wallpaper*

2 Perform operations to set

To change settings

Select *Pictures*, *Photo slide*, *mPet world image*, or *None*

To change the image of Pictures

①Highlight *Pictures* and press w (Edit)

②Select the save location of files and select a file

③Press c (Set)

To set/edit the image of Photo slide

①Select *Photo slide* and press w (Edit)

②Perform Steps 2 to 4 in "Setting Photo Slide" (➲P.8-2) or perform Steps 2 and 3 in "Editing Photo Slide" (➲P.8-3)

3 Press c (Save)

Tip

- **After setting mPet**
  mPet operations are enabled (➲P.24-5). Press y to show Standby as usual; various operations can be performed.

Note

- **With no pet selected in *mPet*, *mPet world image* cannot be set as Wallpaper.**

Photo Slide

1 Press c and select *Tools* → *Photo slide*

2 Press c (Add)

3 Select save location for the file, check the image to set and press w (Done)

To see preview

①Press w (Preview) and select *Yes* (Cropping the left and the right) or *No* (Displaying in the original horizontal and vertical ratio)

②Press C to close the preview

To set effect

①Use j to highlight Effect field

②Use s to toggle setting

To change the switching duration per still image

①Use j to highlight Duration field

②Use s to highlight Effect field

4 Press c (Set) and select *Yes* (crop sides) or *No* (show full image)

Tip

- **To adjust slide size**
  To display large in the window, select *Yes* in Step 4. To display in the original horizontal and vertical ratio, select *No*.

Editing Photo Slide

1 Press c and select *Tools* → *Photo slide*

2 Perform editing operations

To edit still images

①Select *Options* → *Replace*

②Check a still image to set and press w (Done)

To change order of still images

①Highlight the still images to change order, select *Options* → *Change Order*

②Use a to change order and press c (Save)

To delete a still image

Highlight the still image to delete, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Yes*

To add a still image

①Highlight any part where a still image is not set and press o (Add)

②Check a still image to add and press w (Done)

3 Press c (Set) and select *Yes* or *No*

Tip

- **To adjust slide size**
  To display large in the window, select *Yes* in Step 3. To display in the original horizontal and vertical ratio, select *No*.

Clock Display

Default Setting	■Off

In Standby, select Digital clock, Dual clock, and Calendar to display. In Standby, hiding clock is also available.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Clock display*

2 Select settings

Digital clock

①Select *Digital clock*

②Press W (Edit) and use S to select clock type

③Press C

Dual clock

①Select *Dual clock*

②Press W (Edit)

③Perform Step 3 in "Changing Home Time Zone" (➲P.1-22)

To display calendar

Select *Calendar*

To hide clock

Select *Off*

3 Press C (Save)

Tip

- **When *Dual clock* is set**
  In Standby, two types of clock appear. Upper clock indicates time of the district set by "Changing Home Time Zone" (P.1-22). Bottom clock indicates time of the district set by "Dual clock."

Operator Name

Default Setting	■Off

In Standby, show or hide operator name.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Operator name*

2 Select the setting and press c (Save)

Menu Display

Menu Style

Default Setting	■Black

Change Display type of menu list (Except Yahoo! Keitai menu).

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Main menu style*

2 Perform operations to set

To set *Bicycle*

①Select *Bicycle*

②Use s to change the type

③Press d and Use s to change seasons

To set *Amoeba* or *Slider*

①Select *Amoeba* or *Slider*

②Use s to change the type

To set *Black*

Proceed to Step 4

3 Press C

4 Press W (Save)

Popup Menu

Default Setting	■ Off

Set whether to display minor items in balloon when highlighting a medium item of a menu.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Popup menu*

2 Select the setting and press C (Save)

Tip

- **When you highlight a middle item that has no small item**
  Menu balloons are not displayed. They are not displayed in *Alarms* in Tool Menu either.

List Font Size

Default Setting	■ Large

Set main menu item font size.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *List font size*

2 Select the setting and press C (Save)

Zoom List

Default Setting	■Off

Set whether to enlarge highlighted item of a menu in selection display.

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Zoom list***

2 **Select the setting and press c (Save)**

Tip

- **Applicable range of the zoom list setting**
  Zoom list setting is applied to the third layer menu and lower. For example, in a case you select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *Diverts*, the menu *Voice call* and lower menus are zoomed.

Backlight Brightness & Duration

Adjusting Display Brightness

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Brightness***

2 **Use a to adjust brightness and press c (Save)**

Backlight Duration

Default Setting	■On: 15 seconds ■Dim: 5 seconds

Set Display backlight lighting time and make display settings. Display becomes dimmer when the time set in *On* has elapsed and Display goes off when the time set in *Dim* has elapsed.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Backlight time***

2 **Select an item and make settings**

To set the time to light brightly

①Select On field

②Select the time to set and press C

To set the time till Display goes off

①Select Dim field

②Select the time to set and press C

3 **Press W (Save)**

Sub LCD Light

Default Setting ■Power saving mode

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Sub LCD light***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **The contents of *Sub LCD light* are:**

  On: Turn on for 3 seconds after closing 708SC, then the bottom part of Sub LCD turns off.

  Power saving mode: Turn on for 3 seconds after closing 708SC, then turns off.

  Off: Always off.

  Sub LCD always turns off while 708SC is opened.

Dialing Display

Default Setting ■Font type: Normal

Change Display to appear when dialing in Standby mode. When character type is set to either *Normal* or *Serif*, alternatively, change the font size, color, and/or background color.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Dialling display***

2 Select an item and make settings

To set font type

①Select *Font type*

②Use s to switch font type

To set the font size

①Select *Font size*

②Use s to select the size

To set font color

①Select *Font colour*

②Use s to select the setting

③Use u to move cursor to Color selection field and use s to select a color (For *Monochrome* only)

To set background color

①Select *Background colour*

②Use s to select the color

3 Press c (Save)

Greeting Messages

Default Setting	■Main LCD: No entry ■Sub LCD: No entry

Change power on message for Display.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Display settings* → *Greeting message* → *Main LCD* or *Sub LCD*

2 Edit power on message text

Display Language

Default Setting	■日本語 (Japanese)

Set 708SC user interface to appear in English, Japanese, or Korean.

1 **Press C and select** *設定* → *一般設定* → ***Language*** **or** *言語選択*

2 **Select *English* and press C (保存/Save/저장)**

Sound Settings

Changing Profile Settings

Change 708SC incoming transmission response by profile.

In Car Profile, select a different method to answer calls.

1 In Standby, press * for 1+ seconds

2 Highlight a profile and press W (Edit)

To set Ringtone volume

①Select *Ringtone volume* and select item to set
②Use S to adjust volume
③Press W (Play) to check the volume and press C
④Press W (Save)

To set ringtone for Voice/Video Call

①Select *Ringtone* and select *Voice call* or *Video call*
②Select the save location for files

③Highlight a melody, select *Options* → *Play*
④Press o (Select)
⑤Press w (Save)

To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS

①Select *Ringtone* and select *Messages*
②Select the setting
③Press w (Play) to check the ringtone and press c
④Press w (Save)

To set vibrator

①Select *Vibration* and select the items
②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set ringtone duration for S! Mail/SMS

①Select *Message ringtone duration*
②Enter duration and press c

To set sound effect or key tone volume

①Select *Key tone volume*
②Use s to adjust the volume and press c (Save)

To make sound effect

①Select *Phone sounds*
②Check an item to set and press w (Save)

To set key tone

①Select *Key tones*
②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set the answering method (Car Profile only)

①Select *Call answer mode*
②Select the setting and press c (Save)

Tip

- **Ringtone volume**
  Select ⏏ to adjust volume step by step. Ringtone volume become louder gradually.
- **Acoustic shock**
  Setting Acoustic shock function *On*, even with high Ringtone volume for Voice Call/Video Call, the 708SC rings at Level 1 volume for the first two seconds, then at the set volume.
- **Incoming call answering mode in Car Profile**
  With *Any key* set, answer an incoming call with any key except w , o , y , or Side Key n or b .
  With *Automatic* set, automatically answer it and talk with the speaker without performing key operations.
- **To set the time (seconds) to answer automatically in Car Profile**
  After ② in "To set the answering method" in Step 2, select *Automatic*, press w (Edit), select the setting and press c to set the answering method.
- **To set a ringtone after recording with Voice recorder**
  After ② in "To set ringtone" in Step 2, select amr file.
- **To adjust the volume while 708SC rings**
  Press Side Key n or b while 708SC rings.
- **To set notification by display indicator only (Mute)**
  To set receiving notifications (for incoming calls/received messages) by display indicator only, mute *Ringtone volume* and set *Vibration Off*, 708SC shows mute indicator ( ).
- **To change ringtone title for S! Mail/SMS**
  ① After ② in "To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS" in Step 2, highlight *Data Folder* and press o (Change)
  ② Select location to save the file
  ③ Highlight the file, select *Options* → *Play*
  ④ Press o (Select)
  ⑤ Press w (Save)
- **To adjust the key tone volume in Standby**
  In Standby, press Side Key n or b .

Sound settings in *Settings*

Sound settings in *Settings* is a menu for changing the settings of Normal Profile. Other mode settings cannot be changed.

Profile settings

Available items vary by each Mode. The defaults are as listed below.

—: Setting deactivated

Item \ Profile		Normal	Manner	Car	Meeting	Outdoor
Ringtone volume						
	Voice call	Level 4	—	Level 4	Off	Level 5
	Video call	Level 4	—	Level 4	Off	Level 5
	Messages	Level 4	—	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Ringtone						
	Voice call	03 acapella.mmf	—	03 acapella.mmf	03 acapella.mmf	03 acapella.mmf
	Video call	Techno Dance.mp4	—	Techno Dance.mp4	Techno Dance.mp4	Techno Dance.mp4
	Messages	Pure	—	Pure	Pure	Pure
Vibration						
	Voice call	On	On	On	On	On
	Video call	On	On	On	On	On
	Messages	On	On	On	On	On

Item \ Profile	Normal	Manner	Car	Meeting	Outdoor
Ringtone duration					
Messages	5 Seconds	—	5 Seconds	5 Seconds	5 Seconds
Key tone volume	Level 2	—	Level 4	Off	Level 5
Phone sounds	Several tones On	Alerts on call	Several tones On	Alerts on call	Several tones On
Key tones	Xylophone	—	Xylophone	Xylophone	Xylophone
Call answer mode	—	—	Normal	—	—
Answer machine	—	On	—	—	—

Phone sounds setup items

Available items vary by each Mode. The volume of these sounds follows the Key tone volume settings.

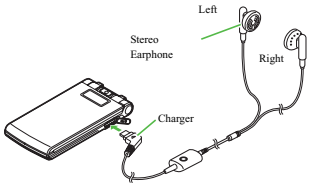
Item	Description
All	Check/uncheck all of the effect sound items.
Popup box alerts	Generate sound when a confirmation or warning message appears.
Minute minder	Generate sound at approximately every minute during a call.
Call connect tone	When a call is initiated, the call is connected before the ringtone sounds on other party's handset and you will be notified with a tone that the other party will be called from now.
Call end tone	Generate sound at the end of a call.
Power on	Generate sound when the power is turned on.
Open/close folder	Generate sound when opening or closing handset.
Alerts on call	Generate sound when alarm is activated or mail is received during a call.

Media Player

Before Using Media Player

Play sound or video files saved in Data Folder or stream online media.

- From Music or Video menu, select *Download music* or *Download videos*, to access Yahoo! Keitai and download media files.
- Hear sound not only from the speaker, but also using the stereo earphone microphone. Insert the plug as shown in the figure below. When using the speaker, unplug the stereo earphone microphone from handset.



- Use the stereo earphone microphone not only for listening to music but also for initiating voice calls. When 708SC rings/vibrates while playing music using a stereo earphone microphone, press the switch on the stereo earphone microphone for 1+ seconds to answer the call.

Playable File Type

Player	File (Extension)
Music	MPEG4 Audio (mp4, aac, 3gp (Sound only))
Video	MPEG4 (mp4, 3gp)

Tip

- **Other restrictions**
  Files other than described above saved in Sounds & Ringtones in Data Folder are not playable with Media Player. To play these files, select directly from Sounds & Ringtones folder in Data Folder.

Playing Music

1 Press C and select *Media Player* → *Music*

2 Perform file selection operations

To select from *All music*

Select *All music* and highlight the file

To select from *Recent music*

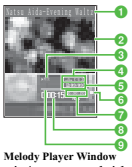
Select *Recent music* and highlight the file

To select from *Most played music*

Select *Most played music* and highlight the file

To playback using Playlist (P.10-7)

3 Press C (Play)



Melody Player Window

1. Artist's name and title (File name when the music title information is unknown)
2. Skin
3. Status : PLAY／PAUSE／STOP
4. Repeat mode
   (Off)／(One)／(Shuffle)／(All)
5. File number/Total number of files
6. Playing volume
7. Total playing time
8. Elapsed playing time
9. Progress bar

Tip

- **To end the playback and return to *Options***
  Press C . If you press C while *Options* appearing/operating *Options*; *Options* closes/returns to the previous menu.
- **If there is an incoming call while playing**
  The play pauses and a ringtone sounds. After the call is ended, Media player continues to pause the playback.
- **If Message is received while playing**
  or appears on the top of Display and 708SC vibrates to notify you.
- **When the time set for alarm has come while playing**
  Playing pauses, Alarm sounds and alarm details appears. Press any key to stop Alarm sound and restart playing. Press any key again to restore Media Player display.
- **To set melody file as Ringtone/Alert tone**
  While a file is highlighted or playing is paused or stopped, press W (Set as) and choose how to use the file. However, a file that cannot be set to be a ringtone will not be set a ringtone.
- **To use another function while listening to music**
  Use Switch Bar (➔P.1-25).

All music

All playable files by Media Player's *Music* function appear. Up to 9999 files can be listed.

Download music

Use *Download music* as shortcut to a download site. Select to connect to a download site on the internet.

Music search

Music search of Media Player is a shortcut to a music search site *Music search*. It allows you to search for music by music category or keyword.

Recent music/Most played music

Recent music shows playback record in recent days. The most recent played file appears on top of the list. *Most played music* shows frequently played files record. The most frequent played file appears on top of the list. Up to 100 records can be saved.

Player Window & List Options

Available items vary by file type, etc.

Item	Description
Send	Send file via S! Mail (➲P.17-6) or Bluetooth® (➲P.12-6).
Add	Add files to Playlist. Select *Playlist* to add all files contained in another Playlist. Select *Files* to add selected files to Playlist.
Move track in playlist	Change order of files in Playlist.
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.
Add to playlist	Files in *All music* are added to Play List. Choose *Selected file* to add highlighted file, or *Multiple file* to add multiple files to Playlist.
Play by	Play tracks by album, artist or genre.

Item	Description
Delete	Delete a highlighted file or all files.
Rename	Change file name.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size, etc.
Stop	Stop playing.
Play via	Playback music files. When Playback display, select *Phone* to sound from speaker. Select *A/V headset* to sound from speaker or Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) (➲P.12-7).
Transfer to A/V headset/Transfer to Phone	Toggle sound output between Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) and Phone (➲P.12-7).
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Create playlist	Create new Playlist (➲P.10-6).
Rename	Change Playlist name.
Open playlist	Open Playlist.

Item	Description
Player settings	Select settings related to Media Player (P.10-7).

Tip

- **With *Transfer to A/V headset* is set**
  Raise/lower volume from A/V headset. 708SC cannot be used to raise/lower volume.

Playing Melodies Using a Playlist

Create Playlist

Create a maximum of 20 Playlists, each containing up to 100 files.

1. **Press C and select *Media Player* → *Music***
2. **Select *Options* → *Create playlist***
3. **Enter Playlist name**
4. **Select the created Playlist**
5. **Select *Options* → *Add* → *Files***

6 Check every file to save and press W (Save)

Tip

- **To create new Playlist by selecting all tracks in existing Playlist:**
  ① Perform Steps 1 to 3
  ② Select *Options* → *Add* → *Playlist*
  ③ Select Playlist from which to add all melodies
- **To change the name of Playlist**
  ① Highlight Playlist, select *Options* → *Rename*
  ② Enter Playlist name
- **To delete selected Playlist**
  Highlight Playlist, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*
- **To delete all Playlists**
  ① Highlight Playlist, select *Options* → *Delete* → *All*
  ② Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)
  ③ Select *Yes*

Play

1 Press C and select *Media Player* → *Music*

2 Select Playlist to play, select *Options* → *Play*

Changing Music Player Settings

Repeat Mode

Default Setting	■OFF

Play a single track repeatedly, all files in All music, or tracks from Playlist, randomly or repeatedly.

1 Press C and select *Media Player* → *Music*

2 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Repeat mode***

3 **Select an item and press c (Save)**

Tone Volume

1 **Press c and select *Media Player* → *Music***

2 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Tone volume***

3 **Use a to adjust the volume and press c (Save)**

Audio Skin

Default Setting	■Rainbow wave

Set one of two images to appear on Display while playing a melody.

1 **Press c and select *Media Player* → *Music***

2 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Audio Skin***

3 **Select the setting and press c (Save)**

Visualization Mode

Visualization On/Off

Default Setting	■On

Select whether to display the skin set in *Visualization*, to display the controller, and to activate backlight settings on Display while playing AAC or AAC+ format file within MPEG4.

1 **Press C and select *Media Player* → *Music***

2 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Visualization* → *Visualization mode***

3 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Skin, Show Controller, & Backlight

Default Setting	■Skin: Flowers ■Show controller: Show ■Backlight: Normal

Select one of 10 skins to display while playing a melody file. To display this skin on the whole window, set the *Show controller* to *Hide*. With the Backlight set to *Always on*, while handset is open, view the skin while listening to music.

1 **Press C and select *Media Player* → *Music***

2 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Visualization* → *Skin*, *Show controller*, or *Backlight***

3 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Playing Video

1 **Press C and select *Media Player* → *Video***

2 **Perform operations to select files**

To select from *All Video*

Select *All Video* and highlight the file

To select from *Recent video*

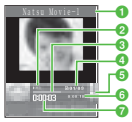
Select *Recent video* and highlight the file

To select from *Most Played video*

Select *Most Played video* and highlight the file

To select from Playlist (➲P.10-7)

3 Press C (Play)



Video Player Window

1. Artist's name and title (File name when the video title information is unknown)
2. Playing status : PLAY/PAUSE/STOP
3. Progress bar
4. File no./Total number of files
5. Playing volume level
6. Total playing time
7. Elapsed playing time

Tip

- **To set video file as Ringtone**
  Highlight the file press W (Set as) with suspending Playback, then perform operations to set (➲P.11-11). The operations are unavailable for files those cannot be set for ringtone.
- **Playlist**
  ① After Step 1, select *Options* → *Create playlist*
  ② Perform Steps 2 to 5 in "Create Playlist" (➲P.10-6)

All Video

All playable files by Media Player's *Video* function appear. Up to 9999 files can be listed.

Download videos

Use *Download videos* as shortcut to a download site. Select to connect to a download site on the internet.

Recent video/Most Played video

Recent video shows playback record in recent days. The most recent played file appears on top of the list. *Most Played Video* shows frequently played files record. The most frequent played file appears on top of the list. Up to 100 records can be saved.

Player Window & List Options

Select *Options* in Player window or list and perform operations listed below. Available items vary by file type, etc.

Item	Description
Full screen view	Display video on the whole window.
Add	Add files to Playlist. Select Playlist to add all files contained in another Playlist. Select files to add selected (not all) files to Playlist.
Move track in playlist	Change order of files in Playlist.
Stop	Stop playing video.
Edit	Edit video files (➲P.7-17).
Resolution	Set video display size.
Send	Send file via S! Mail (➲P.17-6) or Bluetooth® (➲P.12-6).
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.
Add to playlist	Add a file to Playlist in *All Video*. Select *Selected file* to add a highlighted file to Playlist. Select *Multiple file* to add multiple files to Playlist.
Delete	Delete a highlighted file or all files.
Rename	Change file name.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm file size, etc.
Play via	Playback music files. When Playback display, select *Phone* to sound from speaker. Select *A/V headset* to sound from speaker or Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) (➲P.12-7).
Transfer to A/V headset/ Transfer to Phone	Toggle sound output between Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) and Phone (➲P.12-7).

Item	Description
Create Playlist	Create new Playlist (➲P.10-6).
Rename	Change Playlist name.
Player settings	Select settings related to Media Player (➲P.10-11).

Player Settings

Repeat Mode

Default Setting	■Off

Set to play a file repeatedly; set to play all files in a folder at random or repeatedly.

1 **Press c and select *Media Player* → *Video***

2 **Highlight a file and press c (Play)**

3 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Repeat mode***

4 **Select the setting and press c (Save)**

Tone Volume

1 **Press c and select *Media player* → *Video***

2 **Highlight a file and press c (Play)**

3 **Select *Options* → *Player settings* → *Tone volume***

4 **Use a to adjust the volume and press c (Save)**

Resolution

Set the size of videos appearing on Display during play or pause.

1. **Press C and select *Media Player* → *Video***
2. **Highlight a file and press C (Play)**
3. **Select *Options* → *Resolution* and select a size**

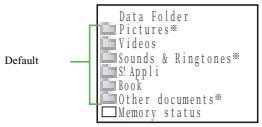
Managing Files
(Data Folder)

Data Folder

708SC files are organized in folders by file format.

Default Folders

Data Folder contains six Default folders; new files are saved to the appropriate folder (see right). Create additional sub-folders in Default folders as required.



※Sub-folder *Pre-installed* (For files which come pre-installed with

Folder	Description	File Formats[1]
Pictures	All still images	JPEG, BMP, GIF, WBMP, PNG, Animation GIF
Videos	All videos	MPEG4 (3GP, MP4)
Sounds & Ringtones	All sounds recorded with Voice Recorder, downloaded music, and other sound files	SMAF/MIDI/SP-MIDI, MPEG4 Audio, AMR
S! Appli	S! Appli	JAVA
Book	Save downloaded electronic comic/ photo book files	CCF
Other documents	Documents, graphics/animation requiring File Viewer for display; Flash® files, vFiles, etc. are saved here	SWF, SVG, vCard, vCalendar, PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, TXT, Unsupported files

1 Copy or move sorted files (by their file types) to other folders as required.

Tip

- **Savable number of files/folders**
  Up to 999 files/folders can be saved each Default Folder.

Memory status

By selecting *Memory status*, view the memory usage of each Data Folder.
Alternatively, use the setup menu to view this (➲P15-8).

Download links

, displayed in Data Folder, is a shortcut to a download site. If you select this shortcut, connect to a download site on the internet.

Download Book feature

In Data Folder, Use *Download Book* in Book Folder as shortcut to a download site. Select to connect to a download site on the internet.

Saved Files

Opening Files

1 Press C and select *Data Folder*

2 Select the folder where a file is saved

3 Highlight a file and press C (View/Play/Select)

Tip

- **To use Slide Show**
  ① Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display images
  ② Select *Options* → *Slide show*
- **To enlarge or reduce image**
  ① Perform Steps 1 to 3 to display an image
  ② Select *Options* → *Zoom*
  ③ Press w (), o (), or a to enlarge, reduce, or scroll the image
  ④ Press C to return to the previous window
- **After enlarging/reducing image**
  After ② in "To enlarge or reduce image," press o () to display list window.
  Press o () to change window view; select another file to check.
- **File List Indicators**
  : Nontransferable
  : Nontransferable and unusable
  : Protected
  : Copyrighted file (Transferable, Content Key valid)
  : Copyrighted file (Transferable, Content Key expired)
  : Copyrighted file (Nontransferable, Content Key valid)
  : Copyrighted file (Nontransferable, Content Key expired)
  : Wallpaper set (➲P.11-10)
  : Ringtone set (➲P.11-11)

- **When another USIM Card is inserted into 708SC**
  Other than preinstalled nontransferable files/ preinstalled copyrighted files cannot be used.
- **To show displayed image in Full screen view**
  After Step 3, select *Options* → *Full screen view*. For partially displayed image, use a to change the display area. Press o (Rotate) to rotate the image. Press C to return to the previous view.
- **Viewing File Details**
  Select *Options* → *Details*

Note

- **A file that is larger than 3 MB cannot be displayed. Also, a file that is larger than 1600 x 1200 pixels cannot be edited or zoomed. A file that is larger than 1.3 MB cannot be set as Incoming image or Substitute Image.**

Activating Camera or Voice Recorder from Data Folder

Select *Options* → *Take photo*; activate Camera in Camera mode by highlighting the Pictures folder or an image file captured by 708SC.
In the same way, select *Options* → *Record video*; activate Camera in Video mode by highlighting the Videos folder or a video captured by 708SC.
Select *Options* → *Record sound*; activate Voice Recorder by highlighting the Sounds & Ringtones folder or sound file captured by 708SC.

Using File Viewer

Open PDF, XLS, DOC, PPT, or TXT files saved in Data Folder; File Viewer activates automatically. Select Normal View or Full Screen View; navigate files via *Options* or shortcuts.

Normal View

Full Screen View

1 Press C and select *Data Folder*

2 Select file location then file

3 Select *Options*/navigation shortcuts to navigate

To scroll

Press a

To change Display appearance

Select *Options* → *Full screen view* or *Normal view*

To enlarge or reduce the image

① Select *Options* → *Zoom*

② Press *In* or *Out* to enlarge/reduce

To fit document size to Display

Select *Options* → *Fit to screen*

To move a page

Select *Options* → *Go to* and select an item

To move to specified page

① Select *Options* → *Go to* → *Page*

② Enter page number

To capture current screen

Select *Screen capture*

To rotate image 90 degrees clockwise

①Select *Options* → *Rotate*

②Select *Options* → *Rotate* to return to the previous window

To search words in the page

①Select *Options* → *Search*

②Enter words

③Press 3 to continue searching forward or press 1 to continue searching backward, for the same word

To view assigned shortcut keys

Select *Options* → *FileViewer shortcuts*

Tip

- **After capturing**
  Captured files are saved in *Other documents* in 708SC Data Folder (Phone) as JPEG format.

File Viewer Settings

Default Setting	■Panning: 10 pixel ■Reflow: Off ■Map on: On ■Controller: On ■Name: Capture

1 Press c and select *Data Folder*

2 Select save location and select the file

3 Select *Options* → *Settings*

4 Perform operations to set

To assign scroll range per press of a

①Select *Panning*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To fit text width to Display

①Select *Reflow*

②Select *On* and press c (Save)

To set Map (shows display position) on/off

①Select *Map on*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To set guide for shortcuts in Full screen view

①Select *Options* → *Settings* → *Controller*

②Select the setting and press c (Save)

To change default file mane

①Select *Name*

②Enter a name

Tip

- **When *Reflow* is set to *On***
  Fit text width (such as doc. or txt.) to 708SC window width. No need to scroll right/left to show the contents.
- **When *Map on* is set to *On***
  In bottom right of the window, map showing the current position/area in the whole page appears. The current position/area is indicated in red frame.

Navigation Shortcuts

Key	Description
Side Key n	Zoom in
Side Key b	Zoom out
2	Move to the first page
4	Move to the previous page
5	Rotate 90 degrees clockwise or cancel
6	Move to the next page
8	Move to the final page
*	Select Normal View or Full Screen View

Confirmation Window & List Options

For items other than window operation options, see "Data Folder Options" (➲P.11-13).

Note

- **If a document includes many pages or complicated designs, all pages of the document may not be able to be displayed.**
- **If a file includes any language other than Japanese or English, that file may not appear properly.**

Viewing Graphics/Animation with the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer

View SVG, SVGZ, and SWF formatted files in Data Folder. When one of these files is selected from Data Folder list, the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer is automatically launched.

View the graphics/animation on Normal View or Full Screen View. In either mode, *Options* and shortcut (Key operations) are available to control Display.

Normal View

Full Screen View

1 Press c and select *Data Folder*

2 Select file location then file

3 Select *Options*/navigation shortcuts to navigate

To change Display appearance

Select *Options* → *Full screen view* or *Normal view*

To enlarge or reduce the image

① Select *Options* → *Zoom*

② Press w ( ) to enlarge an image or o ( ) to reduce

③ Use a to scroll the window

④ Press c to return to the previous window

To pause or restart an flash® image

Select *Options* → *Pause* or *Resume*

To select image quality

Select *Options* → *Quality* and select an item

To rotate the screen 90 degrees clockwise or counterclockwise

Select *Options* → *Rotate* and select an item

Tip

- **To set an image for Wallpaper**
  Press w (Set as) on Normal View, or in *Options* of Full Screen View, select *Set as* and select *Wallpaper*.

Confirmation Window & List Options

For items other than window operation options, see "Data Folder Options" (P.11-13).

Sorting Files

Sort files in various ways.

1 Select *Options* → *Sort by*

2 Select an item

To sort files in descending order of dates

Select *Date*

To sort files by file types

Select *Type*

To sort files by file names

Select *Name*

To sort files in ascending order of size

Select *Size*

To sort files by status of Content Key

Select *Activation Status*

Tip

- **When folders are contained in a list**
  Folders are placed at the top in any order.
- **Sorting order when *Type* is selected**
  Files are sorted in the alphabetical order of the file extension (For example doc, jpg, swf, and such).
- **Sorting order when *Name* is selected**
  Files are sorted in the order of number → alphanumerics → Japanese character of the file names.
- **Sorting order when *Activation status* is selected**
  Files are displayed in the following order: Unrestricted file → Nontransferable file → Copyrighted file (Content Key valid) → Copyrighted file (Content Key expired) → Nontransferable and unusable file

Using Files

Wallpaper

Set an image file as Wallpaper of Display, an image in Phonebook, or a Substitute Image for Video Calls to display with incoming calls.

1 Highlight a file and press W (Set as)

To set while viewing an image

Highlight a file, press C (View) and press W (Set as)

2 Set the Use of the File

To set as Wallpaper on Display

Select *Wallpaper*, confirm the preview and press C (Set)

To set as Phonebook image for use with an incoming call

① Select *Caller ID*

② Search and select an entry in which to place the image and press C (Set)

To set as Substitute Image for use with an incoming Video Call

① Select *Still picture*

② Press C (Save)

Tip

- **To edit a still image (➲P.7-15)**
- **To create a mobile postcard (➲P.7-7)**
- **To print a still image (➲P.12-12)**

Setting Sound File as Ringtone

Change ringtone settings in Normal profile (➲P.3-3).

1 Press C , select *Data Folder* and select location to save the file

2 Highlight the file and press W (Set as)

3 Perform operations to set

To set ringtone for Voice Calls
Select *Voice ringtone*

To set ringtone for Video Calls
Select *Video ringtone*

To set ringtone for Phonebook entries
①Select *Caller ringtone*
②Search Phonebook and select an entry

To set ringtone for S! Mail/SMS
Select *Message alert tone*

Tip

- **Settings Restriction**
  MPEG4 files with audio codec (AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+), can be set only when they are copyrighted.

Setting Video File as Ringtone

Change ringtone settings in Normal profile (➲P.3-3).

1 Press C , select *Data Folder* and select location to save the file

2 Highlight the file and press W (Set as)

3 Perform operations to set

To set video file as ringtone for Voice Call
Select *Voice ringtone*

To set video file as ringtone for Video Call
Select *Video ringtone*

To set ringtone for Phonebook entries
Select *Caller ringtone*

Tip

- **Settings Restriction**
  MPEG4 files (mp4, 3gp) with audio codec (AAC, AAC+, or Enhanced AAC+), can be set only when they are copyrighted.

Setting Flash® file as Wallpaper

1. **Press C and select *Data Folder* → *Other documents***

   To set while viewing a Flash® image
   Highlight the file, press C (View) and press W (Set as)

2. **Highlight the file, press W (Set as)**
3. **Select *Wallpaper***
4. **Check preview window and press C (Set)**

Saving a vFile

vFile is the standard format to exchange Phonebook data, etc. via the Internet. 708SC uses vCard (extension: vcf) format for Phonebook data; also uses vCalendar (extension: vcs) format for Schedule/To Do data.

Save a vFile stored in Data Folder to Phonebook, calendar, or as a scheduled event.

1. **Press C, select *Data Folder* and select save location for the vFile**
2. **Select a file and press C (Register)**

Data Folder Options

Perform the following operations from *Options* in list or viewing windows. *Options* that appear vary by the type of file or folder.

For *Options* used for the File Viewer or SVG-T/Flash® Viewer, see "Using File Viewer" (➲P.11-5) or "Viewing a Graphics/Animation with the SVG-T/Flash® Viewer" (➲P.11-8).

Item	Description
Edit	Edit a still image or Videos (➲P.7-15).
Dynamic Effect/ Dynamic effect list	Create Flash® images using Still images (➲P.7-19).
Full screen view	Display Still image in full screen (➲P.11-5).
Playback	Playback video files. When playback display, select *Phone* to sound from speaker. Select *A/V headset* to sound from Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) (➲P.12-7).
Transfer to A/V headset	Switch sound output to Bluetooth®-compatible devices (stereo headphone, etc.) (➲P.12-7).
Register to phonebook	Export a vCard file to Phonebook (➲P.11-12).
Register to Calendar	Export a vCalendar file to Calendar (➲P.11-12).
Send	Send file via S! Mail (➲P.17-6) or Bluetooth® (➲P.12-6).
mPostcard	Create a mobile postcard (➲P.7-7).
Zoom	Enlarge or reduce still image being confirmed (➲P.11-3).
Browser access	Access linked site included in electronic comic/photo book files.
Sort by	Sort files (➲P.11-9).
Move	Move files from/to 708SC another folder.
Copy	Copy files and paste from/to 708SC another folder.

Item	Description
Add to playlist	Add files to Playlist. Highlight *Selected* and select to add a file. Highlight *Multiple* and select to add multiple files at once.
Delete	Delete a file/files (➲P.11-17).
Delete folder	Delete a folder (➲P.11-17).
Take photo	Activate Camera in Camera mode (➲P.11-4).
Record video	Activate Camera in Video mode (➲P.11-4).
Record sound	Activate Voice Recorder (➲P.11-4).
Rename	Change file name (➲P.11-15).
Rename folder	Change folder name (➲P.11-15).
Show/Hide file info	In List window for Picture Folder with thumbnail view, set to display folder/file name when highlighted.

Item	Description
View By	Select List window type for Picture Folder. Select *List* to show folder/file in list view. Select *Thumbnail view* to show folder/file in thumbnail view.
Create folder	Create a new folder (➲P.11-15).
Print via	Print Still images using the printer via USB/Bluetooth® connection.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Details	Confirm file/folder properties.
Content key info	Show the list of Content Keys for the files in Data Folder; manage them by selecting *Delete* to delete (➲P.11-19) or *Details* to check the details.

Managing Files/Folders

Create Folder

Create sub-folders in Default folders.

1 **Press C and select *Data Folder***

2 **Select Default folder to create a sub-folder**

3 **Select *Options* → *Create folder***

4 **Enter a name**

Changing a File Name/Folder Name

Change the name of a file or a created sub-folder.

1 **Press C and select *Data Folder***

2 **Select Default folder and highlight a sub-folder or a file to change the name, select *Options* → *Rename folder* or *Rename***

3 **Enter a name**

Tip

- **When a file is locked**
  You cannot change the file name.

Moving a File/Folder

Move a file/folder to another folder or a location outside folders.

1 **Press C and select *Data Folder***

2 **Select Default folder and highlight a sub-folder or a file to move**

3 **Select *Options* → *Move***

4 Move the file or folder

To move one file or all files in the same folder or all created sub-folders

Select *Selected* or *All*

To select and move multiple files or created sub-folders

①Select *Multiple*

②Check files or created sub-folders to move and press w (Move)

5 Select the destination folder → *Move here*

Tip

- **To check/uncheck all files or folders at once**
  Press o (Mark all) or o (Unmark all)
- **When a file is locked**
  You cannot move the file.
- **When there is a file or folder with the same name at the destination**
  You have to change the name of the file or folder to move. In message text, enter a new name.

Note

- **The files downloaded with 708SC may not appear/playback properly when moving to other mobile phones or inserting other's USIM Card into 708SC.**

Copying Files/Folders

Make a copy of a file or folder in another folder or a location outside folders.

1 Press c and select *Data Folder*

2 Highlight a folder or a file to copy, select *Options* → *Copy*

3 Copy the file or folder

To copy one file or all files in the same folder or all folders

Select *Selected* or *All*

To select and copy multiple files or folders

①Select *Multiple*

②Check files or folders to copy and press w (Copy)

4 Select the destination folder and select *Paste here*

Tip

- **To check/uncheck all files or folders at once (P.11-16)**
- **When a copy of a file or folder is pasted to the same location as the original**
- The pasted file or folder is saved under another name, i.e., *_001* is automatically added to the name.
- **When there is a file or folder with the same name in the destination**
  You have to change the name of the file or folder to paste. In message text, enter a new name.

Note

- **The file that forwarding is impossible and the copyrighted file cannot be copied.**

Deleting a File/Folder

Delete

1 Press c and select *Data Folder*

2 Highlight a file, select *Options* → *Delete*

3 Delete the file

To delete one file

Select *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete all files from the same folder

①Select *All*

②Enter Phone Password press c (Confirm) and select *Yes*

To select and delete multiple files

①Select *Multiple*

②Check files, press w (Delete)

③Enter Phone Password and press c (Confirm) (If all files are checked)

④Select *Yes*

Tip

- **To check/uncheck files or folders at once (➲P.11-16)**
- **If a file is set as Wallpaper or ringtone, or locked**
  A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to execute deletion. To delete multiple or all files, select *No* to delete only those files without setting or protection.
- **When file has Content Key**
  A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to delete both the file and Content Key.

Delete Folder

1 Press c and select *Data Folder*

2 Select Default folder and highlight a created sub-folder to delete, select *Options* → *Delete folder*

3 Enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) and select *Yes*

If no file saved in a sub-folder

Phone Password is not required.

Tip

- **If a folder contains files set as Wallpaper, ringtones, or locked/copyrighted files**
  A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to execute folder deletion. Select *No* to delete only files without designated uses or protection, leaving the folder undeleted.
- **When file in a folder has Content Key**
  A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to delete both the file and Content Key.

Deleting a Content Key

1 Press C and select *Data Folder*

2 Select *Options* → *Contents key info*

3 Perform operations to delete

To delete a Content Key

Select *Selected*

To delete all Content Keys

Select *Delete all*

External Connections

External Connections

Send and receive data to/from a Bluetooth®-compatible device, without any physical connection. Alternatively, connect 708SC with various devices, like a Personal Computer or a printer to exchange data or print out images via a USB cable.

Bluetooth®

Exchange data among Bluetooth®-compatible devices including mobile phones such as 708SC using signals. When a Bluetooth® handsfree device is connected, converse without operating 708SC directly with your hands. Alternatively, use a dialup-connection devices, to access the Internet or for other purposes.

Before Using Bluetooth® Communications

Bluetooth® communications can be performed only when others using Bluetooth®-compatible devices with the same profiles.

The Bluetooth® specifications of 708SC are as listed below.

Item	Specification
Communication Standard	Bluetooth® Standard Version 1.2
Applicable profiles	Headset Handsfree Serial Port Dialup Networking File Transfer Object Push Advanced Audio Distribute Audio/Video Remote Control Basic Imaging Basic Printing[1]
Output	Bluetooth® Power Class2

Item	Specification
Line-of-signal distance[2]	Approximately 10 meters or less
Frequency band used	2.4 GHz

1 For Printing function only.
2 Varies by radio interference and other conditions.

Bluetooth® Precautions

- 708SC may not work with all Bluetooth®-compatible devices.
- Exchanging data may be unavailable with some devices even if they are Bluetooth®-compatible devices and they may have different operating procedures, displays or actions of 708SC, depending on their characteristics and/or specifications.
- The radio band (2.4GHz) used by Bluetooth®-compatible devices is also used by various other devices. Therefore, the transmission rate or distance may be reduced or communications may be blocked due to the influences of other devices.
- Talking using wireless or handsfree mode may induce noise depending on the other connected devices and/or the communications environment.
- 708SC Bluetooth® function does not allow multiple devices when Bluetooth®-compatible headset is connected.
- USB and Bluetooth® functions cannot be used at the same time.
- Set the Bluetooth® function off before connecting a USB cable to handset.

Tip

- **To check Bluetooth® functions available**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Bluetooth service*
  ② Select an item and view the contents
- **To confirm the device address of 708SC**
  Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My Information*

Sending & Receiving Data

Send and receive Phonebook entries, My Phonebook details, Schedule information, Task information, still images, video, sound files, vFiles, and others.

Activation

Default Setting	■Off

Setting the Bluetooth® function *On* activates connection with a Bluetooth®-compatible device and causes to appear at the top of Display.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Activation***
2. **Select the setting**

Search New Device

Register a Bluetooth®-compatible device to the My devices list. Register a maximum of 10 devices.

When registering a device, the same passkey must be entered into 708SC and the other device.

Activate the Bluetooth® function of the other device beforehand.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices***
2. **Select *Search new device***
3. **When devices replying to the search have appeared, select the device to register**
4. **Enter passkey (4 to 16 digits) and press C**

5 Within 30 seconds, enter the same passkey on the other device

Tip

- **Passkey**
  The Passkey is a password used to connect Bluetooth®-compatible devices. When connecting to a handsfree device, enter the Passkey specified for it. You are not required to enter the Passkey again for a registered device.
- **If authentication with the other device has failed**
  A confirmation message appears asking whether to try authentication again. Select *Yes* to retry.
- **If ten peripheral devices have already been registered**
  A message indicating the device memory is full appears.

- **To check Bluetooth® functions available for each device**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
  ② Highlight a device, select *Options* → *Service list*
  ③ Highlight an item, select *Options* → *Help* and view the contents
- **To change the name of a registered device**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
  ② Highlight a device, select *Options* → *Rename*
  ③ Enter a new name
- **To delete a device from My devices**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*
  ② Highlight a device, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* or *All*
  ③ Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) (In the case of *All* only) and select *Yes*
- **To search for or register a device from other Bluetooth®-compatible devices (P.12-10)**

Icons displayed on the My devices list

The device name is preceded by the following icons.

: Personal Computer : Mobile phone

: Handsfree device/Headset

: PDA : Printer : Other

Connection request from another Bluetooth®-compatible device

If a message indicating that there is a connection request from another Bluetooth®-compatible device appears, select *Yes* and enter the same Passkey as that of the other device within 30 seconds.

If there is a connection request from an already registered device, such as a handsfree device, 708SC will be automatically connected.

Sending Files

Send data from *Options* of function windows. After the receiving side approves a communication, sending is started.

1 Perform operations to set

To send files from Data Folder

①Highlight the data to send

②In list window, select *Options* → *Send* → *Via bluetooth*

To send files from other functions (except Data Folder)

①In list window for each functions, highlight the data to send

②Select *Options* → *Send* → *Via bluetooth*

2 Select the device of the receiver

When the receiver's device has not been registered

Select *Service new device*, search for that device and register it (➲P.12-4)

Tip

- **To send data after viewing the contents**
  Some functions allow sending option from Details/Playback window.

Receiving a File

When connection from the sender is approved, file reception starts and the received file is saved in Data Folder.

1 When a confirmation window appears, select *Yes*

A/V Headset

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible headphone/headset devices to Media Player to enjoy playback sounds.

1 Playback Melody/video files using Media Player (➲P.10-3, 10-9)

2 Select *Options* → *Transfer to A/V headset*

3 Select headset device

To register device

Select *Search new device* and search the device to register (➲P.12-4)

Tip

- **Operations while Melody is stopped**
  ① In Melody Playback window, select *Options* → *Play via* → *A/V headset*
  ② Select the destination device or *Search new device* and search the device to register (➲P.12-4)

Print Still image in Data Folder

Connect Bluetooth®-compatible printer to 708SC; enable to print Still images/vFiles in Data Folder directly through handling 708SC. Set paper size/number for printing with 708SC.

See User Guide attached to printer for printer operations/paper settings.

1 In Data Folder list window, highlight still image/vFile

2 Select *Options* → *Print via* → *Bluetooth*

3 Select receiver's device

To register receiver's device
Select *Search new device* to search and register (➔P.12-4)

4 Perform operations to set

To set a paper size
Select *Paper size* and the setting

To set the number of copies
Select *Number of copies*, enter the number of copies (1 to 99) and press c

To set the number of pages to print on a sheet
Select *Paper per sheet* and the setting (1 to 16)

To set whether or not to print the date
Select *Date print* and the setting

To set whether or not to print a frame
Select *Frame* and the setting

To set a print quality
Select *Print quality* and the setting

5 Press o (Preview)

6 Check the preview window and press c (Print)

Accessing Connected Device Files

Access the shared folders and files of the other party's device. Alternatively, receive or delete data residing on the other device.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*

2 Select a device

3 Approve access on the side sharing the data

Tip

- **To receive an accessed file**
  After Step 3, select a file to receive.

Locations of received files

Received files are automatically saved to Data Folder. The type of the folder that a file is saved to vary by file format; for example, JPEG and BMP files are saved to the *Pictures* folder and vFiles to the *Other documents* folder.

Connecting Handsfree

Register the handsfree device following the steps for "Search for and Register a Bluetooth®-Compatible Device" (➔P.12-4) beforehand.

Waiting Connection Request

In the steps given below, 708SC is placed in mode waiting for a handsfree-device connection request.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My devices*

2 Select a handsfree-compatible device

When Passkey entry window appears

Enter the same Passkey as is set for the handsfree device

Answering Mode

Default Setting	■Normal

If the setting is changed to *Automatic* a call to 708SC will be answered without the operation of any keys.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Answering mode***

2 **Select the setting**

> **Tip**
> - **To set the time (Seconds) before automatic reception**
> After Step 1, highlight *Automatic*, select *Options* → *Edit* and select the number of seconds to ring before answering.

Handsfree Mode

Default Setting	■ Handsfree Mode

Select answer settings for calls when handsfree devices connected.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Handsfree setting***

2 **Select the setting**

> **Tip**
> - **While Private Mode is set**
> Answer outgoing/incoming calls with 708SC for calls made with 708SC; answer outgoing/incoming calls with handsfree devices for calls made with handsfree devices.
> - **While Handsfree Mode is set**
> Answer all outgoing/incoming calls with handsfree devices.

Changing Bluetooth® Settings

My Phone's Visibility

Default Setting	■On

To activate search and saving from other Bluetooth®-compatible devices, you have to make your 708SC visible.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My phone's visibility***

2 **Select the setting**

Bluetooth® Name

Default Setting	■708SC

The displayed name shown on another device for your 708SC can be changed.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *My Information***

2 **Select *Bluetooth Name***

3 **Modify the name and press C**

Secure Mode for Data Transfer

Default Setting	■On

If set *On*, a confirmation message appears before you sending data.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Connectivity* → *Bluetooth* → *Secure mode***

2 **Select the setting**

USB Connection

Connect 708SC to a PC via a USB cable to exchange data between the devices. Alternatively, connect a printer to print still images.

Connecting to a PC

Perform the following:

- Send files from Data Folder of 708SC
- Receive files from the PC and saving them to Data Folder
- Perform packet data communications

Before Using the USB Connection

Before connecting 708SC to a PC with a USB cable, you have to install the USB driver and the Samsung PC Studio. For more information about the installation procedure, operating conditions of a PC available, etc., see the User's guide in the attached CD-ROM.

Connecting to a Printer

Connect 708SC to a PictBridge-compatible printer with a USB cable and directly print still images from

Data Folder. Alternatively, set a paper size, number of copies, and other items from 708SC.

For more information about printer operations and paper setting, see the printer's User Manual.

Printing a Still Image from Data Folder

1. **Highlight a still image file in Data Folder**
2. **Select *Options* → *Print via* → *USB***
3. **Connect 708SC to a printer with a USB cable**
4. **Select the printer settings**

   To set a paper size

   Select *Paper size* and select the setting

   To set the number of copies

   Select *Number of copies*, enter the number of copies (1 to 99) and press c

To set the number of pages to print on a sheet

Select *Paper per sheet* and select the setting (1 to 16)

To set whether or not to print the date

Select *Date print* and select the setting

To set whether or not to print a frame

Select *Border* and select the setting

To set a print quality

Select *Print quality* and select the setting

5 **Press** c

6 **Check the preview window and press** c **(Print)**

Note

- **Never disconnect the USB cable during printing.**

Security

Change Phone Password

Default Setting	=9999

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Change phone password***

2 **Enter current Phone Password and press C (Confirm)**

3 **Enter new Phone Password (4 digits) and press C (Confirm)**

4 **Enter new Phone Password again and press C (Confirm)**

PIN

PINs are security codes for USIM Card. For more information, see "USIM Card" (➲P.1-2).

Changing PIN/PIN2

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Change PIN code* or *Change PIN2 code***

2 **Enter current PIN or PIN2 and press C (Confirm)**

3 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) and press C (Confirm)**

4 **Enter new PIN or PIN2 again and press C (Confirm)**

Note

- **When *PIN lock* (➲P.13-3) is set to *Disable*, PIN cannot be changed.**

PIN Lock

Default Setting	■Enable

To require PIN authentication each time the power is turned on, set this function to *Enable*.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *PIN lock***
2. **Select the setting and press C (Save)**
3. **Enter PIN and press C (Confirm)**

Resetting PIN Lock

If PIN or PIN2 is been incorrectly entered three consecutive times, PIN or PIN2 lock is set, restricting operations of 708SC. Unlock PIN or PIN2 lock in the steps given below.

1. **With PIN lock unlocking code (PUK Code) entry window displayed, enter PUK Code and press C (Confirm)**
2. **Enter new PIN or PIN2 (4 to 8 digits) and press C**
3. **Enter new PIN or PIN2 again and press C**

Note

- **For more information about PIN and PIN2 lock unlocking codes (PUK and PUK2 Codes), contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).**
- **If incorrect PIN lock unlocking code is entered ten consecutive times, USIM Card is locked (The count is not cleared when handset is turned off).**
- **There is no way to unlock the locked USIM Card. Contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).**

USIM Lock

Default Setting	■Disable

Set handset so that it is deactivated unless a USIM password is entered when another USIM Card is installed in handset.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *USIM lock***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

3 **Enter a USIM password (4 to 8 digits) and press C (Confirm)**

To set *Disable*

The settings are saved and the operation completes.

To set *Enable*

Proceed to Step 4

4 **Enter the USIM password again and press C (Confirm)**

Tip

- **USIM password**
  This is a password dedicated to USIM Card authentication. If the USIM password matches, the other USIM Card can also be used for 708SC. Change USIM password each time the USIM check setting is set to *Enable*.
- **When you forget your USIM password**
  Insert a USIM Card (with USIM lock set to *Enable*) to 708SC and execute All reset (➔P.13-11).

Handset Security

Phone Lock

Default Setting ■Disable

Set *Phone lock* to *Enable*; then Phone Password entry is required each time the power is turned on.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Phone lock***
2. **Select the setting and press C (Save)**
3. **Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)**

Password Lock

Default Setting ■Disable

Set *Password lock* to *Enable*; then hide Softkeys in Standby. Press any key; Phone Password entry window appears. Enter Phone Password to cancel Password lock; 708SC operations are enabled.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Password lock***
2. **Select the setting and press C (Save)**
3. **Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)**

Tip

- **When *Password lock* is canceled**
  Password lock is automatically set to *Disable*.

Privacy Lock

Default Setting ■Unlock all

Set *Privacy lock* to require Phone Password entry each time calling up checked function/functions (selected among *All*, *Messages*, *Data Folder*, *Phonebook*, *Call log*, *Calendar*).

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Privacy lock***
2. **Check the functions to lock and press W (Save)**
3. **Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)**

Activate Secret Mode

Default Setting ■Hide

Set Secret Mode to *Hide*; then hide the saved entry information (with Phonebook Secret Mode *On*) in Phonebook list.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Activate Secret mode***
2. **Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)**
3. **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **Under following conditions, 708SC turns the setting to *Hide*; *Activate Secret mode* is set to *Show* then 708SC is powered on again.**

Mobile Tracker

Default Setting	■Off

Set *Mobile tracker* to *On*; then 708SC notifies when another USIM Card (not the one in 708SC during the setting operations) is inserted. Set SMS address for notification. Up to 2 addresses can be specified.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Security* → *Mobile tracker*

2 Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)

3 Select Activation field

4 Select *On* and press C (Select)

5 Select Recipients field and enter an address

To select an address from Phonebook

① Highlight To field and select *Options* → *Phonebook*

② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.5-9)

③ Highlight phone number and press C (Select)

To enter a phone number directly

① Highlight To field and select *Options* → *Direct input*

② Enter phone number

6 Press W (Done)

7 Select Sender field and enter a sender's name

8 **Press W (Save)**

9 **Press W (Accept) after checking the items**

Tip

- **To delete an address**
  After Step 5, highlight the address, select *Options* → *Delete*

With another USIM Card inserted

When powered on replacing with another USIM Card; 708SC send a notification SMS to your specified address during the handset activation. The SMS sending never come to the person (who replace the USIM Card)'s notice. 708SC also send a notification SMS when Phone Password is incorrectly entered three consecutive times during *Mobile tracker* setting is *Off*.

Rejecting Incoming Calls

Reject calls by callers who do not send caller IDs/by callers who are unable to send caller IDs. In addition, nuisance calls can also be rejected by registering the caller phone numbers to a Black list.

Reject Withheld

Default Setting	■Off

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls***

2 **Select Reject withheld field**

3 **Select the setting and press C**

4 **Press W (Save)**

Reject Unavailable

Default Setting	■Off

Reject/accept calls by callers who are unable to send caller IDs, like International calls from overseas/ transferred calls from landlines.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls***

2 **Select Reject unavailable field**

3 **Select the setting and press C**

4 **Press W (Save)**

Black List

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls***

2 **Select Black list field**

3 **Set the phone number**

To enter a phone number directly

① Select *Options* → *Add* → *Direct input*

② Enter phone number

To select a phone number from Phonebook

①Select *Options* → *Add* → *Phonebook*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

③Select phone number

To enter a phone number using Call Log

①Select *Options* → *Add* → *Call log*

②Select the log record

4 Press C and press W (Save)

Tip

- **To delete phone numbers from Black list**
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Highlight the phone number to delete, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* or *All* → *Yes*

Reject Black List

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Reject incoming calls*

2 Select Reject black list field

3 Select the setting and press C

4 Press W (Save)

Calls from phone numbers in *Black list*

Calls are not connected. Caller hears a busy tone. *Missed call* appears in Standby. Press W (View) to see Missed Calls.

Restoring Defaults

Clear Memory

Clear Data Folder, Messaging folders, Phonebook (Phone) entries, and Calendar entries each or all at once.

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → *Clear memory***

2 **Check items to reset and press w (OK)**

3 **Enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) and select *Yes***

Master Reset

Reset Settings

Clear Saved contents/settings and restore defaults. However, the following contents are not restored.

Setting menu	Content not to be reset
Phone settings	Contents set in Time and Date fields for *Time & date*
Display settings	Contents set in *Brightness*
Call settings	*All calls*→*Reject incoming calls*→ contents saved in *Black list* *Voice call*/*Video call*→contents saved/set in *Diverts* *Voice call*→contents set in *Call waiting* Contents set in *Call barring* Contents set in *Voice mail*
Phonebook settings	Contents saved/set in *My phonebook details*, *Category settings*
Connectivity	*Preferred networks*
Security	*USIM lock*, *PIN lock*, *Change PIN code*, *Change PIN2 code*

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → *Master reset* → *Reset settings***

2 **Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes***

Reset All

Restore 708SC defaults and delete Phonebook (Phone), Messaging, and Data Folder contents/ settings. Original files and S! Appli are restored.

1 **Press C , select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Phone memory* → *Master reset* → *Reset all***

2 **Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes***

Tools

Alarms

Wake-up Alarm/Alarms

Register a Wake-up alarm and 4 other alarms. Each alarm can be named and the name given to Alarm appears when Alarm sounds. Once an alarm time is saved, it can only be set/reset by switching *Alarm activation* to *On* or *Off*. In addition to setting one time only alarm, set alarms to repeat on specific days of the week or everyday.

1 Press C and select *Tools* → *Alarms*

2 Select an alarm from *Wake-up alarm* to *Alarm4*

3 Select Alarm activation field

4 Select *On* and press C

5 Select and set other items as required

Set a name (*Wake-up alarm* cannot be edited)

①Select Alarm name field

②Enter the name to set

Set Alarm time

Highlight Alarm time field and enter the time

Set an Alarm sound

①Select Alert tone field

②Select the location of sound file, select an alarm sound and press C

Set Vibrator

①Select Vibration field

②Select the setting and press C

Set Alarm volume

①Select Alarm volume field

②Use S to adjust the volume

③Press W (Play) to check the volume and press C (Save)

Set whether to sound repeatedly or only one time

①Select Repeat field

②Select *Everyday* or *Once alarm* and press c

Set days of the week for a repeated alarm to sound

①Select Repeat field

②Select *Specify days* and press c (Edit)

③Check the days to set and press w (OK)

Set a snooze procedure

①Select Snooze field

②Select the setting and press c

If you do not want to activate Alarm yet

①Select Alarm activation field

②Select *Off* and press c

6 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **When wake-up alarm/alarms are set**
  appears.
- **When wake-up alarm and/or multiple alarms have been set for the same activation time**
  Wake-up alarm takes priority over *Alarm1* to *Alarm4*. Among alarms, the last set one takes priority.
- **Alarm volume settings**
  Select to adjust volume step by step. Alarm volume become louder gradually.

When the time set for Wake-up alarm/Alarm comes

Alarm sounds and a message appears if an alarm sound is set to mute (➲P.9-4), you are notified by the vibrator even when Alarm sound is not set to *On* in Step 5. Alternatively, notify using vibrator with vibration setting *On*. Press any key to stop Alarm sound and press any key again to clear the message.

When Snooze is not set to *Off*

Until Snooze canceling operation takes place, alarm notification continues for about one minute repeatedly in specified time intervals. The notification repeated up to six times. If no key operation or any key operations other than y , o (End) take place during alarm notification, alarm sound stops; notification with alarm is set to sound again after specified time elapsed. To cancel Snooze, press y or o (End).

When a call is being initiated or during a call

During a call or connection (*Connecting*···appears), 708SC notifies with a short sound and indicator; uncheck *Alerts on call* (in Phone sounds setting) to notify only by an indicator. When an outgoing call is being Initiated (*Dialing*···appears), 708SC notifies with a short sound and indicator as connection established. Press any key twice to clear an indicator; with Snooze *On*, press o (End).

When the time set comes while capturing video or recording sound

Alarm sound is generated as soon as capturing of recording finishes.

Auto Power On

Default Setting	■Off

If you set this setting to *On*, even when the power is turned off, the power is automatically turned on at the time set for a wake-up alarm or alarm.

1 Press c and select *Tools* → *Alarms* → *Auto power*

2 Select *On* or *Off* and press c (Save)

Note

- **Cancel Auto power settings under following conditions; near electronic devices requiring high-precision control or handling weak signals, in places such as airplanes or hospitals prohibiting the use of mobile phones.**

When the Time for Wake-up alarm/Alarm comes

708SC automatically turned the power on. Deactivating alarm sound, display indicator, snooze function is performed by the same operation as usual (P.14-4). Stop alarm sound and go off display indicator; 708SC shows Standby display and continues to power on.

Calendar

Displaying Calendar

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar***

Viewing Calendar

There are three modes for displaying Calendar. Select a date on Monthly or Weekly view window to display Daily view window for the selected day.

Monthly View Window

Weekly View Window

: Highlighted position
(Date in light blue) : Current day
Date in red: Holiday/Sunday

(In Yellow) : Anniversary registered
(In Blue) : Schedule registered
(In Green) : Memo registered
(In Red) : Task registered

Daily View

: Schedule
: Anniversary
: Holiday
: Memo
: Task
: Priority
: Alarm set
: Repetition set

Tip

- **To display the previous or next month on Monthly view window**
  Press * / # , highlight Year/Month field and press S
- **To display the previous or next week on Weekly view window**
  Press * / # , highlight Year/Month field and press S
- **To display the previous or next day on Daily view window**
  Press S , * , or #
- **To view a particular month or week**
  From Monthly view window or Weekly view window, change Display by specifying year, month, and day as follows.
  ① In the calendar window, select *Options* → *Go to*
  ② Select Date, enter the year, month, and day and press C
  When *Today* is selected in Step ②, the current date is highlighted on the window of the current month or week.

Calendar Window Format

Default Setting	■Starting day: Sunday ■Default view mode: Monthly view

Set Calendar to begin with Sunday or Monday. Alternatively, set the window displayed when activating Calendar.

1 Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Select *Options* → *Settings*

3 Select settings

Set the first day of week

① Select *Starting day*

② Select the setting and press C (Save)

Set the default view mode

① Select *Default view mode*

② Select the setting and press C (Save)

Tip

- **When settings are changed**
  A change in *Starting day* is immediately reflected. Selecting the settings of *Default view mode* can be applied when you deactivate calendar and then reactivate it.
- **To temporarily change display mode**
  In the calendar window, select *Options* → *View mode* → Display mode

Saving New Entries to Calendar

Scheduled Events

Save a maximum of 100 items.

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar***

2 **Select *Options* → *Add new* → *Schedule***

3 **Select items and make settings**

Set a title
Select Title field and enter a text

Set details
Select Details field and enter a text

Set a starting date
Highlight Start date field and enter a date

Set a starting time
Highlight Start time field and enter a time

Set an ending date
Highlight End date field and enter a date

Set an ending time
Highlight End time field and enter a time

Set an event location
Select Location field and enter a text

Set an alarm

①Check Alarm field to select

②Highlight Before field, enter an interval before Alarm time, use s to highlight Unit field and switch to an appropriate unit

③Select Alert tone field, select a location of sound files and select an alert tone

Set Repeat

①Check Repeat field to select

②Use s to highlight Time cycle field and specify the time cycle unit

③Highlight Value field and enter a value

④Highlight Until date field and enter a year, month, and day to stop repetition

Set Expiry time for a Calendar Event

Use s to highlight Expiry field and switch the expiry limit

4 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a Start date and/or End date**
  Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Start date or End date field.
- **When an event entry has expired**
  An event is automatically deleted from Calendar when it expires. For example, if the expiration is set to *After 1 year*, and event repetition not set, the indication is deleted when one year has elapsed from the ending date of the event. With repetition set, it is deleted one year after the ending date of the last repetition. To deactivate automatic deletion, set the expiry to *Disable*.

Anniversary/Holiday

Register a maximum of 50 anniversaries and 50 holidays.

1 Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Select *Options* → *Add new* → *Anniversary* or *Holiday*

3 Select items and make settings

Set a text

①Select Text entry field

②Enter text

Set a date

Highlight Date field and enter the date

Set an alarm (Anniversary only)

①Check Alarm field to select

②Highlight Before field, enter an interval before the anniversary Alarm time, use S to highlight Unit field and switch to an appropriate unit

③Highlight Alarm time field, and enter a time

④Select Alert tone field, select the location of sound of files and select an alert tone

Set to repeat every year

Check Repeat every year field

4 Press W (Save)

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a date**
  Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Date field.

Memo

Up to 20 memos can be registered. Memos can be registered even while talking (P.2-9, 6-6).

1 **Press c and select *Tools* → *Calendar***

2 **Select *Options* → *Add new* → *Memo***

3 **Select the memo text box and enter text**

To set the date

Select Date and enter the date

4 **Press w (Save)**

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a date (P.14-9)**

Tasks

Register a maximum of 100 time-limited items and manage them in a list.

1 **Press c and select *Tools* → *Calendar***

2 **Select *Options* → *Add new* → *Task***

3 **Select items and make settings**

Set a title

①Select Title field

②Enter title

Set a description of the task

①Select Task field

②Enter text

To set the starting date

Highlight Start date field and enter the date

To set the due date

Highlight Due date field and enter the date

Set an alarm

①Check Alarm field

②Highlight Before field, enter a value for how long before the task starts the alarm should sound, use S to highlight field of units and select an appropriate unit

③Highlight Alarm time field and enter the time

④Select Alert tone field, select the location of sound files and select an alert tone

Set a priority level

Use S to highlight Priority field and select a value

4 Press W (Save)

Tip

- **To make it easier to enter a Starting date or Due date**
  Put cursor on the target date on Calendar window before Step 2 to show that date in Starting date and Due date field.

Volume of Alarm sound

The volume follows the setting of *Tone volume* for Voice calls; the setting of *Voice call* in *Vibration* for Vibrator.

When the time set for Alarm comes

Alarm sounds and a message appears. To stop Alarm, press any key. Press C to cancel the message display. With no action to stop Alarm, a message appears indicating Missed alarm event. Press W (View) to view the message.

When a call is being initiated or during a call

During a call or connection (*Connecting*···appears), 708SC notifies with a short sound and indicator; uncheck *Alerts on call* (in Phone sounds setting) to

notify only by an indicator. When an outgoing call is being Initiated (*Dialing*···appears), 708SC notifies only by an indicator. Press C to clear an indicator.

Viewing Saved Calendar Entries

1 Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

2 Open a window listing items

To check items of one day

Select a date on Monthly view window or Weekly view window, or use S to change the date on Daily view window

To check registered contents by type

Select *Options* → *Event list* and select a type

To check the message of a missed alarm

Select *Options* → *Missed alarm event*

3 Select and view details

Tip

- **To check calendar item status**
  Select *Options* in Calendar or registered contents list and *Memory status*; check the number of savings by type.

Editing Calendar Entries

Editing and Saving as New Entries

In addition to edit and update the entries, edit the entries and save them as new entries.

1. **Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar***
2. **Open a window listing entries**

   To open a window listing entries for a single day
   Select a date on Monthly view window or Weekly view window, or use S to change the date on Daily view window

   To view events by type
   Select *Options* → *Event list* and select a type
3. **Select an item to edit**
4. **Press C (Edit)**
5. **Change the information as required**
6. **Press W (Save) and select *New* or *Update***

Marking a Task as Completed

1. **Press C and select *Tools* → *Calendar***
2. **Select *Options* → *Event list* → *Task***
3. **Highlight a completed task, select *Options* → *Completed***

   To remove the completion mark
   Select *Options* → *To do*

Tip

- **To sort tasks**
  In the Task window, select *Options* → *Sort by* and select a sorting type. Classify tasks into completed/uncompleted ones or sort them by due date or priority.

Deleting Calendar Entries

1 In Calendar window or saved contents list, select *Options* → *Delete*

2 Delete the entry

To delete only the highlighted entry

Select *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete all entries of the current month or week

Select *This month* or *This week* → *Yes*

To delete only entries from a specific period of time

①Select *Periods*

②Enter the start and end dates

③Press C (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all entries or all before the highlighted date

①Select *All* or *All past data*

②Enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Tip

- **To collectively delete multiple registered items**

  Select registered unnecessary items from a list by type and delete them collectively.

  ① Press c and select *Tools* → *Calendar*

  ② Select *Options* → *Event list* and select the type

  ③ Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

  ④ Check the items to delete, press w (Delete) and select *Yes*

Calendar Options

Perform the following operations from *Options* on a window listing Calendar entries:

Item	Description
Add new	Save a new Calendar entry (➲P.14-7).
Send schedule/ Send task	Send Calendar entry via S! Mail (➲P.17-6) or Bluetooth® (➲P.12-6).
View mode	Select a display mode (➲P.14-7).
Go to	Display a particular month or week by changing Monthly/Weekly view window (➲P.14-6).
Event list	View events listed by type (➲P.14-12).
Delete	Delete a Calendar entry (➲P.14-13).
Completed/ To do	Set or cancel the task completion mark (➲P.14-12).
Sort by	Sort tasks (➲P.14-13).
Save to Data Folder	Create a vFile and save it to *Other documents* in Data Folder.
Settings	Select Calendar Display settings (➲P.14-6).

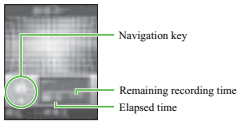
Item	Description
Missed alarm event	View the message of a missed alarm (➔P.14-12).
Print via Bluetooth	Print highlighted schedule event or task using the printer via Bluetooth® connection.
Memory status	Check memory usage for Calendar functions (➔P.14-12).

Voice Recorder

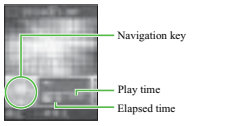
Voice Recorder can record voice of a maximum of 60 minutes. Voice Recorder can be started from the tool menu, as well as during a call, *Options* of Data Folder, or Message creation window. Voice recording can be activated during a call.

Voice Recorder Window

Control Voice Recorder with Softkeys and navigation key.



Recording Window



Playback Window

Recording Voice

The recorded voice is saved to *Sounds & Ringtones* Data Folder.

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder***

To change the fixed recording time (P.14-17)

2 **Press C (Record)**

3 **Press W (Stop) or continue recording until the set time runs out**

4 **As required, press C (Play) to replay**

To pause

Press C (Pause)

To resume

Select *Options* → *Record*

To record voice from *Options* (P.14-16)

Playing Voice

Replay a voice file saved in Data Folder.

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder***

2 **Select *Options* → *My sounds***

3 **Highlight the file and press C (Play)**

Voice Recorder Options

Operate listed below from *Options* before and after recording. *Options* and selectable items vary by the conditions. For more information about available options after selecting *My sounds*, see "Data Folder Options" (➲P.11-14).

Item	Description
Record	Start recording.
My sounds	Call up list of sound files saved in the My sounds folder.
Send	Send a file via S! Mail (➲P.17-6) or Bluetooth® (➲P.12-6).
Set as	Set voice for ringtone, etc.
Delete	Delete a recorded voice file.
Rename	Change file name.
Lock/Unlock	Set/release file protection.
Details	Confirm recorded sound file size, etc.
Record settings	Select the file name assigned automatically or the fixed recording time (➲P.14-17).

Changing Voice Recorder Settings

Default Name

Default Setting ■Voice

The voice recorded with Voice recorder is saved under a name such as "Voice 001." "Voice" can be changed to another word.

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder***

2 **Select *Options* → *Record settings* → *Default name***

3 **Enter a name**

Tip

- **If the default name is changed**
  The naming rule is applied from the next recording.

Recording Time

Default Setting	■5 minutes

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Voice recorder***

2 **Select *Options* → *Record settings* → *Recording time***

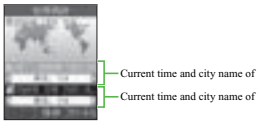
3 **Select a duration and press C (Save)**

World Clock

World clock allows you to check the current time all over the world.

Viewing World Clock

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *World clock***



Selecting Areas

Default Setting	■*Tokyo*, *Seoul* for both areas

When you save a second time zone, easily check the time at that area looking at World clock.

1 **Press c and select *Tools* → *World clock***

2 **Use j to highlight area 1 and use s to change city name**

To set summer time

①Press o (DST)

②Check the area to set summer time and press w (Done)

3 **Press c (Save)**

Using Calculator

Arithmetic operations to a maximum of 13 digits can be performed.

1 Press c and select *Tools* → *Calculator*

2 Calculate

To enter numbers

Press keys

To enter +, −, ×, or ÷

Press r , l , u , or d

To display the calculation result

Press c

To enter ., (, or)

Press w (.( )) to toggle symbols

To move cursor left or right

Press * or #

To erase a symbol in a mathematical expression

Place cursor after a symbol to erase and press C

To erase both the mathematical expression and the calculation result

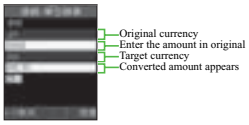
Press C for 1+ seconds

Converting Currencies or Units

Convert the currencies for various countries. Alternatively, convert the units of length, weight, etc.

Converting Currencies

1 Press c and select *Tools* → *Converter* → *Currency*



2 Select Original currency field and the currency

To replace the original currency with the target currency

Press o (Reverse)

3 Select Original currency amount field and enter the amount

To enter a decimal point

Press *

4 Select Target currency field and the currency

5 View the result in the target currency

To check the exchange rate

① Highlight either of Currency fields and press w (View Rate)

② Press C to return to the Original window

To change the exchange rate

① Highlight either of Currency fields and press w (View Rate)

② Select the base currency to change the rate, highlight the currency, select *Options* → *Edit*

③ Enter the rate and press c (Save)

To add a currency unit

①Press w (View Rate)

②Select *Options* → *Add Rate*

③Enter the currency unit/rate and press c (Save)

Converting Units

1 Press c and select *Tools* → *Converter*

2 Select *Length*, *Weight*, *Volume*, *Area*, or *Temperature*

3 Select Original unit field and select the unit

To replace the original unit with the target unit

Press o (Reverse)

4 Highlight Original unit value field and enter the value

To enter a decimal point

Press *

To enter/delete "-" when converting temperature

Press #

5 Select target Unit field and select the unit

6 **View the result in Converted value field**

To clear the values

Press W (Clear)

Stopwatch

708SC can be used as a stopwatch for measuring a maximum of ten lap times plus the total time.

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Stopwatch***

2 **Press C (Start)**

3 **Press C (Lap) to measure a lap time or W (Stop) to stop time measurement**

Dictionary

Look up English/Japanese dictionaries.

1 **Press C and select *Tools* → *Dictionary***

2 **Select a dictionary**

To use English dictionary

Select *English dictionary*

To use Japanese dictionary

Select *Japanese dictionary*

3 **Enter a word to search**

4 **Select a target word**

Interpreter

Use 708SC Interpreter as a translator to find frequently used phrases in particular places (such as an airport), through voice prompts in each language. Available languages are English, Korean, and Chinese. Select place name or the phrases using keys or your voice.

1 **Press c and select *Tools* → *Interpreter***

2 **Select the language**

3 **Select an item**

To set by your voice

Speak the item in menu to 708SC after the beep

To set by keys

Use a to highlight the item and press c

4 **Select the phrase**

To set by your voice

Speak the phrase for inquiry to 708SC after the beep

To set by keys

Press w (メニュー) to select the item

5 **Highlight the phrase and press c**

To listen the phrase

Press w (音を聴く)

To listen the phrase again

Press w (リピート)

Tip

- **To play voice prompts**
  After Step 3, press o (ボイスオン)
- **When** *もう一回言って下さい* **appears**
  708SC could not recognize your voice. Speak clearly again or say another phrases.

Advanced Functions

Calling Functions

Auto Redial

Default Setting	■Off

Set to automatically disconnect a Voice/Video Call initiated to a party that is busy and redial the same party soon. Automatic redialing repeats up to 10 times until y is pressed or 708SC is closed.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings*→ *All calls* → *Auto redial***

2 **Select a value and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **When *Retry with* is set for Video Call**
  Automatic redialing settings take priority.
- **When receiver has activated Voice Mail or Call Forwarding**
  The call is forwarded and automatic redialing is canceled.

International Dial

International Prefix

Default Setting	■010

Set the international code frequently used when initiating an international phone call.

1 **Press C and select *Settings*→ *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *International dial*→ *Int'l prefix***

2 **Enter an international code**

Editing Country Codes

Default Setting	■ 1: Japan 2: KOR 3: GBR 4: ITA 5: CHE 6: ESP 7: DEU 8: PRT 9: NLD 10: FRA 11: MCO 12: USA 13: SWE 14: AUS 15: CHN 16: HKG 17: TWN 18 to 20: Unused

Add a country code or delete an unnecessary one.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *International dial* → *Country codes***

2 **Perform operations to add, change, or delete**

To add or change

① Highlight the item to add or change and press C (Change)

② Select Country name field and enter the country name

③ Highlight Country code, enter code and press W (Save)

To delete

Highlight item to delete, press W (Delete) and select *Yes*

Earphone call

Default Setting	■ Earphone call activate: Off ■ Call number: No list

When *Earphone call* is set to *On*, press switch for 1+ seconds to call specified number.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *Earphone call***

2 Select *Earphone call activate*

3 Select the setting

4 Highlight *Call number* and perform operations to save phone number

To enter a phone number directly

①Press c (Select) and select *Direct input*

②Enter phone number

To select a phone number from Phonebook

①Press c (Select) and select *Phonebook*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

③Highlight phone number and press c (Select)

To enter a phone number using Call Log

①Press c (Select) and select *Call log*

②Select the log record

5 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **To delete a phone number**
  ① Perform Step 1
  ② Press c (Select) and select *Direct input*
  ③ Press C for 1+ seconds press c
- **To change a phone number**
  ① Perform Step 1
  ② Perform Step 4
  ③ Press c (Save)

Handling Incoming Calls

Anykey Answer

Default Setting	■Off

Answer Voice Calls using keys other than c (Accept) or t .

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Anykey answer***

2 **Select *On* or *Off* and press c (Save)**

Tip

- **Answering a Voice Call when *On* is set (➲P.2-3)**

Acoustic Shock

Default Setting	■On

To avoid 708SC starts to ring at high volume, even when high Ringtone volume for Voice Call/Video Call is set, Acoustic shock enables 708SC starts to ring at Level 1 volume for the first two seconds, then at the set volume.

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Acoustic shock***

2 **Select the setting and press c (Save)**

Active Folder

Default Setting	■Off

When *On*, open 708SC to answer an incoming call.

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Active folder***

2 **Select *On* or *Off* and press c (Save)**

Side Key Silence/Reject

Default Setting	■Silence

Use n or b to mute ringer or reject an incoming call. Select from *Reject* (disconnect the call) or *Silence* (silence the incoming tone).

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Side key***

2 **Select a value and press c (Save)**

Side Key Lock

With this function set to *On*, Side Keys of 708SC are locked. Avoid accidental key presses when 708SC is placed inside a bag, etc.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Side key lock***

2 **Select *On* or *Off* and press C (Save)**

Simple Search Setting

Default Setting	▪Off

When *Simple search* is set to *On*, enter numbers in Standby to search Phonebook entries starting with Reading name corresponding each number. Then search result (entry names and phone numbers) list appears.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Phone settings* → *Simple search***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **To initiate calls using *Simple search* (➲P.5-11)**

Idle Shortcuts

Up to nine frequently used functions can be saved; create own Shortcut Menu. In Standby, press u to access functions saved to shortcuts.

1. **Press u**
2. **Highlight unsaved function entry box and press c (Assign)**
3. **Select the function**
4. **Repeat Steps 2 and 3 to save the function**

Tip

- **To change functions**
  ① In Step 2, Highlight the function, select *Options* → *Assign*
  ② Select *Yes* and select the function
- **To sort functions**
  ① In Step 2, Highlight the function, select *Options* → *Change Order*
  ② Use a to highlight the target function box and press c (Select)
- **To delete functions**
  In Step 2, Highlight the function, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Yes*
- **To restore defaults**
  In Step 2, Highlight the function, select *Options* → *Reset* → *Yes*

Memory Status

Check the following information:

- Available shared memory
- Status of SMS and S! Mail mailboxes
- Status of memory in Data Folder
- Status of Calendar items registered
- Status of Phonebooks (Handset and USIM Card)

Alternatively, delete saved entries and/or files.

1 Press c and select *Settings* → *Memory settings* → *Memory status*

2 Select an item to check

Tip

- **To delete the contents**
  When the contents in Data Folder, Calendar or Phonebook are to be deleted
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Highlight an item, press c (Select), select *Yes* and view an entry
  ③ Check the fields to delete, press w (Delete) and select *Yes*
- **To delete all contents**
  After Step ③ in "To delete the contents," enter Phone Password, press c (Confirm) and select *Yes*
- **To check/uncheck all contents at once**
  After Step ③ in "To delete the contents," select *Options* → *Mark all* or *Unmark all*
- **When the checked contents contain the contents that functions or locks are set in**
  After Step ③ in "To delete the contents" or the "To delete all contents" operations, the confirmation window appears. If you select *Yes*, the deletion is performed. If you select *No*, only files without functions or locks set are deleted.

Optional Services

Optional Services

The following optional services are available with 708SC:

Service	Description
Call Forwarding	When you know you will be unable to answer calls to 708SC, automatically divert calls to a specified number.
Voice Mail	Divert all or all unanswered calls to Voice Mail Center; access caller messages via 708SC from within the service area or via a touchtone phone anywhere.
Call Waiting*	A tone sounds for incoming calls when the line is engaged. Put the line on hold to answer or alternate between lines.
Conference Call*	Open another line while one is engaged; toggle lines or talk on all simultaneously. Add new parties to an existing conference; talk on up to five lines simultaneously.
Call Barring	Restrict incoming or outgoing calls by condition.
Caller Identification	Show or hide your own number when placing calls.

* This service requires a separate subscription.

Note

- **When *Out* appears, access services from a touchtone landline. For details, contact Customer Service (P.25-25).**

Call Forwarding

Set forwarding condition and number, by call type (Voice Call or Video Call), beforehand, to divert incoming calls to a specified number.

Forwarding Condition	Description
No reply	Unanswered calls are diverted after the specified ring time, or when the line is busy or 708SC is out-of-range.
Always	708SC does not ring/vibrate for incoming calls; calls are diverted automatically and Missed Call does not appear.

Note

- **Call Forwarding and Voice Mail cannot be used at the same time.**
- **Activating Call Forwarding cancels Voice Mail.**
- **Call Forwarding is not available when *All outgoing calls* or *All incoming calls* in Call Barring is active (Call Barring takes priority over Call Forwarding).**

Activating Call Forwarding

Specify a forwarding number beforehand.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* or *Video call* → *Diverts*

2 Select *No reply* or *Always*; view the current settings

When the settings are acceptable

After viewing, press I to return to the previous window

3 Highlight Forwarding address field and enter a number

To select a phone number from Phonebook

①Highlight forwarding Address field and select *Options* → *Phonebook*

②Select Phonebook, highlight a phone number and press C (Select)

4 For *No reply*, highlight Waiting time field and set a time

5 Press C (ON)

Tip

- **When Call Forwarding (*No reply*) is active**
  While 708SC rings/vibrates, answer a call or press O (Busy) to forward it.

Cancel All

Cancel all Diverts services at once.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* or *Video call* → *Diverts* → *Cancel all*

Tip

- **To stop Call Transfer service for each forwarding condition**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Call Settings* → *Voice call* or *Video call* → *Diverts*
  ② Select *No reply* or *Always*
  ③ Press W (OFF)

Check Status

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* or *Video call* → *Diverts* → *Check status*

Voice Mail

Forward an incoming Voice Call to Voice Mail Center or a specified number based on preset forwarding conditions (➔P.16-3).

Note

- **Voice Mail and Call Forwarding cannot be active at the same time.**
- **Activating Voice Mail cancels Call Forwarding.**
- **Voice Mail is not available when *All outgoing calls* or *All incoming calls* in Call Barring is active (Call Barring takes priority over Voice Mail).**

Activating Voice Mail

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail***
2. **Select *No reply* or *Always***
3. **For *No reply*, highlight Waiting time field and set a time**
4. **Press C (ON)**

Tip

- **When Voice Mail (*No reply*) is active**
  While 708SC rings/vibrates, answer a call or press O (Busy) to forward it.

Canceling Voice Mail

Cancel all Voice mail services at once.

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail* → *Cancel all***

Tip

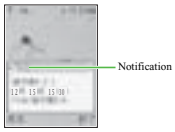
- **To cancel Voice Mail by forwarding condition**
  ① Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail*
  ② Select *No reply* or *Always*
  ③ Press W (OFF)

Checking Settings

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice mail* → *Check status***

Listening to Messages

When a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center, in standby, a message appears. Also, appears at the top of Display.



While Message Appears

Connect to Voice Mail Center as described below and follow voice prompts.

1 **Press W (Dial)**

To check message details

Press C while message appears

Tip

- **To access caller message from overseas**
  ① Press 0 for 1+ seconds and enter +
  ② Enter 819066514170 and press t
- **To delete a message without listening to it**
  Press o (End).
- **To clear**
  Voice Mail indicator disappears when messages are accessed via 708SC.

While No Message Appears

1 Enter 1416 and press t

Incoming Call Notification

If there was a call that could not be answered because you were out of service area or handset was powered off, it is notified with SMS. It is also notified when a caller saves a message at Voice Mail Center while you are talking to other party.

Incoming Call Notification

1 Enter 1414 and press t (Free of charge)

When setting from a general subscriber phone in Japan (Free of charge)
Dial 090-665-1414 and press t

When setting in overseas (Charged)
Press 0 for 1+ seconds, enter +, enter 81-90-665-14191 and press t

2 Perform operations following the audio prompts

Call Waiting*

* A separate subscription is required to use this service.

This service is only available for Voice Calls.

Activating or Canceling

1 **Press c and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Voice call* → *Call waiting***

2 **Activate or cancel the service**

To activate

Press c (ON)

To cancel

Press w (OFF)

Receiving a Second Call

When there is an incoming call during a call, you are notified with a specific interrupt sound and display. Place the current call on hold and answer the second call.

1 **When you hear the interrupt sound, press c (Accept)**

2 **Select *Hold active call***

To end the current call and answer the second call

Select *End active call*

3 **Press w (Swap) to toggle the calls**

4 **To end the current call, press y**

To end the call on hold

Select *Options* → *End* → *Held call*

To end both calls at once

Select *Options* → *End* → *All calls*, or close 708SC

Tip

- **When the other party ends the call and you have another call waiting**
  Press w (Retrieve) to talk to the waiting party.
- **When the Call Transfer service or Voice Mail service is active**
  When the second call is not answered, it is forwarded to a forwarding destination or Voice Mail Center. When the forwarding condition is set to *Always*, the Call Waiting service is not available.

Conference Call*

* A separate subscription is required to use this service.

Talk with a maximum of six parties simultaneously.

New Call

When the called party is connected, the party that has been connected is placed on hold.

1 During a call, select *Options* → *New call* and enter number

To use Phonebook

① Press c (Search) and select Phonebook

② Highlight the phone number and press c (Select)

To use a log

Press t , open logs and highlight the entry

2 Press c (Call) and talk with the connected party

Engaged Conference Call Operations

1 Call another party during a call (P.16-9)

2 Press w (Swap) to switch connected calls

Tip

- **To end the call on hold**
  During a call, select *Options* → *End* → *Held call*
- **To end all calls**
  During a call, select *Options* → *End* → *All calls*, or close 708SC
- **When the current caller ends the call while using Conference Call service**
  A party on hold remains on-hold state. Switch to the on-hold party to talk.

Join

1 During a call, initiate a call to another party (P.16-9)

2 Select *Options* → *Join*

Tip

- **To call with only one person**
  During a call, select *Options* → *Split* and select a caller to talk to
- **To end the call for a specific caller**
  During a call, select *Options* → *End* → *Select participant*, check callers to end and press w (End)
- **To end the all calls**
  During a call, press y
- **When one party ends the call during Conference Call**
  Continue talking with remaining parties.

Call Barring

Use this service to bar outgoing/incoming calls for Voice/Video Calls, sending/receiving SMS under the conditions listed below.

Item		Description
Restrict outgoing calls	All outgoing calls	Deactivates initiating calls and SMS sending, except emergency calls.
	Outgoing Intl calls	Deactivates initiating international calls and SMS sending within your current location.
	Intl except home	Deactivates initiating international calls and SMS sending within your current location or except Japan.
Restrict incoming calls	All incoming calls	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving.
	Incoming when roaming	Deactivates reception of all calls and SMS receiving while outside of Japan.

When setting restrictions, you are required to enter Network Password (The 4-digit number dedicated to Outgoing/incoming service specified at the subscription).

Note

- **If incorrect Network Password is entered three consecutive times, setting or canceling the Call Barring service is deactivated. Note that, in this case, change Network Password and Center Access code. For more information, contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).**
- **When the Call Transfer service or Voice Mail service is active, you cannot use *All outgoing calls* or *All incoming calls* (Call Transfer service or Voice Mail service takes priority).**

Tip

- **When an attempt is made to initiate a call while calls are restricted**
  A message appears indicating that outgoing call restriction is active. The message may appear after a while depending on the area where using 708SC.

Restrict Outgoing/Incoming Calls

Restrict outgoing calls and/or Restrict incoming calls for each type of call (Voice/Video Calls, SMS)/ transmission.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call barring***
2. **Select *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *SMS* and select a restriction type**
3. **Enter Network Password**
4. **Set or cancel call barring**

   To set

   Press C (ON)

   To cancel

   Press W (OFF)

Tip

- **To check settings**
  Perform Steps 1 and 2. After checking the settings, press C to return to the previous window.

Cancel All

Canceling outgoing and incoming call is available for each of call types (Voice and Video Calls, SMS)/ transmission.

1. **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call barring***

2 **Select *Voice call*, *Video call*, or *SMS* → *Cancel all***

3 **Enter Network Password and press C**

Changing Network Password

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *Call barring* → *Change password***

2 **Enter the current Network Password in *Old* field and new Network Password (4 digits) in *New* and *Cnf* (Confirm) field, then press C (Confirm)**

Caller ID

Show or hide your own phone number when calling from 708SC.

Show My Number

Default Setting ▪By network

1 **Press C and select *Settings* → *Call settings* → *All calls* → *Show my number***

2 **Select the setting and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **When set to *By network***
  Automatically set to Show/Hide your number by current network status.

Adding 186 or 184

Use 186 (Show ID) or 184 (Hide ID) prefixes to show or hide your number when calling from 708SC, regardless of the *Show my number* setting.

1 **Enter Show ID or Hide ID Prefix**

To show Caller ID

Press 1 8 6

To hide Caller ID

Press 1 8 4

2 **Enter phone number**

3 **Press** t

To initiate a Video Call

Select *Options* → *Video call*

Receiving & Sending Messages

Getting Started

S! Mail

Use this service to send/receive long text messages, images, videos, other files, and sounds between S! Mail compatible SoftBank handsets and PCs via e-mail.

A separate subscription is required to use S! Mail and receive e-mail.

SMS

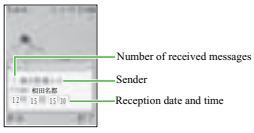
Use this service to send/receive short text messages between SMS-compatible SoftBank handsets using phone numbers.

Tip

- **Retry function**
  If the other party's handset cannot receive a message because the power turned off or out-of-range, 708SC keeps the message saved on Mail Server; then send to the other party after signal reception recovers stable.

Checking for New Messages

When a message is received in Standby mode, reception notification appears. The number of received messages, senders and reception dates/times appear.



Reception Notification Window

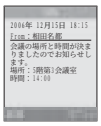
1 Press w (View)

Received Message List

When multiple messages appear

Use s to select the tab and press w (View)

2 Select a new received message



SMS Window

S! Mail Text

Tip

- **When a message is received (out of Standby mode)**
  or appears on the top of Display. When 708SC is closed, an icon like appears on Sub Display (➔P.1-10, 1-12). The icon does not appear with *Sub LCD light* (➔P.8-9) set to *Off*.
- **Received message count**
  When there are unread messages, the total number of new and unread messages appears.
- **Sender information**
  A phone number or mail address appears. When the sender has been saved in Phonebook, you will see the name saved in Phonebook. When an incoming image has been saved in Phonebook or an incoming image has been set for the group, the image appears at the same time. While Secret Mode is set to *Hide* and Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *On* for message receiver/sender information; sender's name/image does not appear.

Operations in SMS window

In SMS window, press Side Keys n b to enlarge/reduce text font size. Alternatively, press u or d

for 1+ seconds to auto scroll. To stop auto scroll, press any key. Press r or l to adjust the scroll speed.

3D Pictogram (➲P.20-5)

By default, when you check an incoming/unread message (Except S! Mail that is set for Slide Show or with an attachment), the message text appears in 3D Pictogram. After 3D Pictogram display ends or w (Stop) is pressed, Message window appears. Perform various operations after Message window appears.

Retrieving Complete Messages

When *Home network* (➲P.20-3) or *Roaming* (➲P.20-3) is set to *Manual*, S! Mail is temporarily stored on Mail Server; part of the received message is sent to 708SC as a reception notification. Retrieve complete messages from Mail Server.

1 Press w and select *Received msgs*

2 Select a message with the rest of it

Notification Details

3 Press C (Retrieve)

4 Select complete message

Message Window

Tip

- **Received Message list window indicators**
  - : Unread reception notification (Priority: High)
  - : Unread reception notification (Priority: Standard)
  - : Unread reception notification (Priority: Low)
  - : Read reception notification (Priority: High)
  - : Read reception notification (Priority: Standard)
  - : Read reception notification (Priority: Low)
- **To retrieve complete messages from Message list window (P.19-2)**

Message window for S! Mail with an attachment

The first page shows the file name for the attachment and the second and subsequent pages show the message. Use r to read the message or select *Options* → *Play* to start Slide Show.

Message window for S! Mail with Slide Show set

Select *Options* → *Play* to play the slide. During playing, press c (Pause)/ w (Stop) to pause/stop it. Use s to manually select pages.

Message window for S! Mail with an inserted file (➲P.17-17, 17-18)

If an image is inserted, the image appears with the message.

If sound is inserted, select *Options* → *Play* to play sound.

If Slide Show is set, sound is played when the page with an inserted sound appears.

If video is inserted, select *Options* → *Play* and press o (Video) to play video.

If Slide Show is set, *Video* appears at the lower right and pressing o (Video) plays sound when the page with an inserted video appears.

Message window with a file requiring purchasing/obtaining Content Key

appears on a page with an inserted file that you cannot view/play.

Select *Options* → *Download content key* to view/play the file.

Using Received Messages

Send a message directly to the sender.

1 Press w (Reply) on the Message window

2 Create a message and press w (Send)

Tip

- **Subject display of S! Mail for replies**
  The subject of a replied S! Mail is prefixed with "RE:" automatically.

Creating Messages

Two types of messages are available on 708SC: S! Mail and SMS. The number of characters that can be sent and entry items are different between these types (Shown below).

		S! Mail	SMS
Number of characters that can be sent		Approximately 10,000 single-byte/double-byte characters[1] Approximately 10,000 characters in one slide[2] (Up to 300K bytes[3])	Maximum of 70 single- byte/ double-byte, Katakana characters Maximum of 160 single-byte alphanumerics (Up to 140 bytes)
Entry item	Address	Yes	Yes
	Subject	Yes	No
	Attachment	Yes	No

Yes: Available

No: Not available

1 The number of characters that can be sent varies by the attachment size, etc.

2 Set a maximum of 20 slides in one message.

3 Total size of all kinds of messages (Including address, subject, text, and attachments).

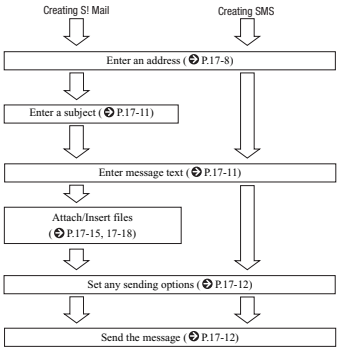
Using the Mail Art Function

When displaying an S! Mail window, use mail art function to display text messages and/or images consecutively like slides or with a background color (➔P.17-12, 17-15, 17-18).

Procedures

Mails should be created in the flow as shown below.

Items other than *Destination* should be entered as required.



Tip

- **To set sending options beforehand (➔P.20-2, 20-5)**

Automatic Change of Message Type

When message creation is started, the message type is set to SMS; it automatically changes to S! Mail when one of the following occurs:

- Entering mail address as a destination
- Entering a subject
- Entering characters exceeding the number of characters that can be sent by SMS
- Inserting files on Slide Show page
- Attaching or inserting a file
- Changing the address type to *Cc* or *Bcc*

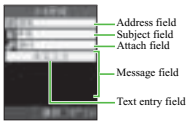
When the message is modified to allow it to be sent as SMS, for example, by deleting an attached or inserted file or a subject, the message type automatically changes to SMS.

Depending on message creation conditions, it may not automatically change type. If the mail type is not changed automatically, change it manually (➔P.17-12).

Address

Enter a phone number or mail address for S! Mail or a phone number for SMS as a message address. Up to twenty addresses can be entered.

1 Press W and select *Create msg*



Message Creation Window

2 Enter an address

To select an address from Phonebook

① Select Address field and select *From Phonebook*

② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➔P.5-9)

③ Highlight a phone number or mail address and press C (Select)

To enter an address directly

① Select Address field and select *Enter Recipient*

② Enter phone number or mail address

To select an address from sent records

Select Address field and select the record

To select an address from a Phonebook Category

① Select Address field and select *From Category*

②Select a Category, with/without Address selection window, highlight an address to enter and press C (Select)

3 To enter another address

To enter an address directly

①Select Address field

②Select Entry field and select *Enter Recipient*

③Enter phone number or mail address and press W (Done)

To select an address from Phonebook

①Select *Options* → *Add recipients* → *Phonebook*

②Search and select Phonebook

③Highlight a phone number or mail address and press C (Select)

To select an address from a Phonebook Category

①Select *Options* → *Add recipients* → *Category*

②Select a Category; with/without Address selection window, highlight an Address to enter and press C (Select)

Tip

- **To create a message using a template (➲P.17-14)**
- **To confirm the entered address**
  In Step 3, select *Options* → *Recipient list*
- **To add an address after confirming the entered address**
  ① In Step 3, select *Options* → *View recipient list*
  ② Select Entry field and perform operation in the same way as Step 2
  ③ Press W (Done)
- **To send a message after confirming the entered address**
  ① In Step 3, select *Options* → *View recipient list*
  ② Select *Options* → *Send*
- **To change the address type to To, Cc, or Bcc**
  ① In Step 3, select *Options* → *View recipient list*
  ② Select *Options*, highlight an address → *Change recipients* → *To*, *Cc*, or *Bcc*
- **To delete an address**
  ① In Step 3, select *Options* → *view recipient list*
  ② Select *Options*, highlight an address → *Remove*
- **To copy, cut, or paste characters (➲P.4-13)**
- **Displaying Address field**
  When multiple addresses have been saved, and the number of addresses appear in Address field on Message creation window.

Note

- **If the free space of the shared memory (➲P.25-15) on 708SC is less than 464K bytes, you cannot create a message. To create a message, delete unnecessary messages.**
- **If the shared memory (➲P.25-15) becomes low while in a message creation, you may not be able to save the message in Drafts.**
- **A message created on 708SC may not appear the same way on the other party's phone.**
- **Message sent with Subject/Text in Hangul, may appear as spaces or be deleted on the other party's phone.**

Subject

1 In Message creation window, select Subject field

2 Enter a subject

Tip

- **To copy, cut, or paste characters (P.4-13)**
- **To set/release the prediction entry function (P.4-14)**

Message

1 In Message creation window, select Message field

When Slide Show is set (P.17-12)

Select Text entry field

2 Enter the message

Tip

- **To copy, cut, or paste characters (P.4-13)**
- **To use an SMS template or Phonebook entry (P.4-11)**
- **To change the font size of characters being entered**
  In Step 2, select *Options* → *Font Size* → *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*
- **To set/release the prediction entry function (P.4-14)**
- **To set Slide Show (P.17-12)**
- **To insert image files, etc. in a Message field (P.17-15, 17-18)**
- **To view the text in 3D Pictogram**
  In Message creation window, highlight Message field, select *Options* → *3D Pict. Disp*.

Sending a Message

1 In Message creation window, press W (Send)

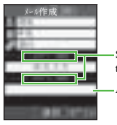
Tip

- **To set sending settings for a message being created**
  ① In Message creation window, select *Options* → *Sending options*
  ② Select an item and make settings (➲P.20-2, 20-5)
  ③ Press W (Apply) or W (Save)
- **To change the message type**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight all fields except Address field
  ② Select *Options* → *Change to S! Mail* or *Change to SMS* → *Yes*

Slide Show

Display S! Mail window in Slide Show. Text messages, images, movies, and sounds can be inserted on each page of Slide Show. Set a maximum of 20 slide pages in one message.

1 In Message creation window, select *Options* → *Insert* → *Text*



Message Creation Window

2 Select added Text entry field and enter a message

3 To add a Text entry field for Slide Show, perform Steps 1 and 2

Tip

- **To insert *Image*, *Sound*, or *Video***
  Perform operations in "Inserting a File" (➔P.17-17). Alternatively, other files can be inserted in the same page. But image/video or sound/video cannot be displayed in the same page.
- **To delete a Text entry field**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field
  ② Select *Options* → *Remove* → *Yes*
- **To preview Slide Show before sending**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a field other than Address field
  ② Select *Options* → *Preview*
  ③ Select *Options* → *Play*

Changing the Style of Message Field

Set the font color, font style, interval time for displaying Slide Show, background color, etc.

1 In Message creation window, highlight Message field

2 Set options as required

To set background color

①Select *Options* → *Edit style*

②Highlight *Select page* and use s to display *All pages*

③Highlight *Background colour* and use a to highlight a color

Set the page display

①Highlight a Character entry field to set

②Select *Options* → *Edit style*

③Highlight *Slide interval* and enter a time

Set the font color

①Select *Options* → *Edit style*

②Highlight *Select page* and use s to display *All pages*

③Highlight *Font colour* and use a to highlight a color

Set a font color for a single slide page

①Highlight a Character entry field to set

②Select *Options* → *Edit style*

③Highlight *Font colour* and use a to highlight a color

Set font size for all pages

①Select *Options* → *Edit style*

②Highlight *Select page* and use s to display *All pages*

③Highlight *Font Size* and use s to display a size

To set font size for a single slide page

①Highlight a Character entry field to set

②Select *Options* → *Edit style*

③Highlight *Font Size* and use s to display a size

To change the display order for text and images (Videos)

①Select *Options* → *Edit style*

②Highlight *Select page* and use s to display *All pages*

③Highlight *Order item* and use s to display *Text-Top* or *Image (Video)*

3 Press c (Save)

Tip

- **To preview the style before sending**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a field other than Address field
  ② Select *Options* → *Preview*
  ③ Select *Options* → *Play*

Note

- **If the type of message being created is SMS, *Edit style* or *Preview* does not appear in *Options*.**

Templates

Create and send a message using S! Mail or SMS template.

1 **Press W and select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* or *SMS templates***

2 **Highlight an S! Mail or SMS template**

3 **Select *Options* → *Send***

4 **Create a message and press W (Send)**

Tip

- **To use after viewing an S! Mail template**
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Select *Options* → *View*
  ③ Select *Options* → *Play* as required
  ④ Select *Options* → *Edit and send*
- **To register a template (➔P.4-16, 18-19)**

Attaching/Inserting Files

A file that can be attached/inserted to an S! Mail is limited in size to 294K bytes (except the message address, subject and message text size). Up to 20 files can be attached to one S! Mail.

Tip

- **To check the size of a message being created**
  Select *S! Mail* as the Type of the message, the message size appears in the upper-right corner.

Note

- **Note that some recipients may not be able to receive attachment or inserted files.**
- **Video files that cannot be sent by S! Mail (File size: over 294K bytes, *Size*: over 176 x 144, *Quality*: other than *Economy*, or etc.) are attached/inserted, the message indicating attaching/inserting failed appears.**

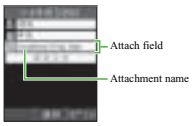
Attaching/Inserting a File from Data Folder, etc. into Message Field

Attach images, video, and/or sounds saved in Data Folder to a message, as well as any contents saved in Phonebook and Calendar (converted as vCard format or vCalendar format). If you insert a file in Message field, display/play the file when you view the Message window.

Attaching a File

1 In Message creation window, Select Attach field

2 Perform operations to attach



Message Creation Window (File Attached)

To attach file

①Select *Data Folder*

②Select a file from Data Folder

To attach Phonebook data as vCard file format

①Select *Phonebook details*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

③Press W (Add)

To attach Calendar items as vCard file format

①Select *Calendar item*

②Select the items

Tip

- **To add a file**
  Perform Step 1 to 2 in "Attaching a file" (➲P.17-16)
- **To check an attachment**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
  ② Select a file
- **If you attach a file**
  An icon indicating the file type and the file name is displayed in Attach field.
  : Image : Sound
  : Video : vCalendar
  : vCard : File other than above
- **To replace a file**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
  ② Highlight a file and select *Options* → *Replace*
  ③ Perform Step 2 in "Attaching a file" (➲P.17-16)
- **To delete a file**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
  ② Highlight a file and select *Options* → *Remove* → *Selected*
- **To delete all files**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Attach field and select *Options* → *View attachment*
  ② Select *Options* → *Remove* → *All* → *Yes*

Inserting a File

1 In Message creation window, select *Options* → *Insert*

To insert a file with Slide Show set (➲P.17-12)

①In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field to insert a file

②Select *Options* → *Insert*

2 Select the file to insert

Message Creation Window (File Inserted)

To insert an image

①Select *Image*

②Select an image from Data Folder

To insert sound

①Select *Sound*

②Select sound from Data Folder

To insert a video

①Select *Video*

②Select movie from Data Folder

Tip

- **To preview an inserted file**
  ① Select *Options* → *Preview*
  ② Select *Options* → *Play*
- **If you insert a file**
  In Message creation window, the icon indicating the file type, file name, and file size is displayed in Text entry field. If you inserted an image with no restrictions on its being displayed, the image will be shown in reduced size instead of the icon.
  : Images that cannot be displayed because of Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained
  : Sound
  : Video
- **To replace a file**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Text entry field
  ② Select *Options* → *Replace*
  ③ Select a file, an entry, or a calendar item
- **To delete a file**
  ① In Message creation window, highlight a file in Text entry field
  ② Select *Options* → *Remove* → *Yes*

- **To insert a file where another file has already been inserted**
  A new Slide Show page is added automatically and the file is inserted. In case of an image file and sound file, both can be inserted on the same page.

Creating & Inserting a File

While creating a message, create a file and insert it. The file inserted to Message field is displayed/played when Message window is opened.

1 In Message creation window, select *Options* → *Create & Insert*

To insert a file with Slide Show is set

①In Message creation window, highlight Text entry field where a file to be inserted
②Select *Options* → *Create & Insert*

2 Select a creation method and insert the file

To capture a photograph

①Select *Take picture*
②Press c (Take)
③Press c (Add)

To record video

①Select *Record video*
②Press c (Record)
③Press c (Save)
④Select *Options* → *Add to message*

To record sound

①Select *Record sound*
②Press c (Record)
③Press w (Stop)
④Select *Options* → *Add to message*

Tip

- **If you insert a file**
  708SC works the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (➲P.17-18).
- **To insert a file where another file has already been inserted**
  708SC works the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (➲P.17-18).
- **To replace or delete a file**
  Perform operations the same way as the file inserted from Data Folder to Text entry field (➲P.17-18).
- **Operations activated before and after capturing a still image (➲P.7-6)**
- **Operations activated before and after recording video (➲P.7-11)**
- **Operations activated before and after recording sound (➲P.14-18)**

Saving Created Messages

Save to Drafts

When temporarily stopping message creation to perform other operations, save the message being created to the Drafts.

1 In Message creation window, select *Options* → *Save to Drafts*

Tip

- **When C / y / l is pressed on Message creation window**
  When C , y , or l is pressed after entering something or attaching or inserting a file, a message appears asking whether to finish creating the message. Select *Yes* to save the created message to Drafts.

Note

- **Only when any of addresses, subject, and text is entered or a file is attached/inserted, *Save to Drafts* appears in *Options*.**

Save as a Template

By saving a message with fixed contents, etc. as an S! Mail templates, new S! Mail can be easily created and sent.

1. **In Message creation window, highlight Attach field or Text entry field**
2. **Select *Options* → *Save as template***

Note

- ***Saved as template* appears in *Options* only when a subject is entered or the message is longer than SMS, or when a file is inserted.**

Messaging Folders

Viewing Messages

Five mailboxes are created on 708SC.

Mailbox	Message type
Received msgs	Received messages.
Drafts	Message drafts saved before completion.
Unsent msgs	Messages unsent because of failure or cancellation, or waiting to be sent.
Sent msgs	Messages already sent.
Templates	S! Mail or SMS saved as templates.

Tip

- **To check message memory status**
  ① Press W
  ② Select *Memory status*
  ③ Select *SMS*, *S! Mail (By count)*, or *S! Mail (By size)*
- **To create a personal folder in Received msgs (➲P.18-15)**

Note

- **When adding a new SMS to Drafts, Unsent msgs, or Sent msgs cause the maximum number of allowed message to be exceeded, the oldest SMS is deleted automatically.**

Message Lists

From list of *Received msgs* or *Unsent msgs*, view the messages.

1 Press W

2 Select *Received msgs* or *Unsent msgs*

Received Message List

To check from a personal folder in Received msgs

Select a folder; then Phone Password entry window appears, enter Phone Password and press c (Confirm)

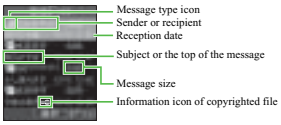
3 Select a message

Tip

- **In Message window, press * or #**
  Switch between previous and next window.
- **When pressing Side Keys n b in SMS window**
  Press Side Key n to enlarge font size by two levels; press Side Key b to reduce font size by two levels
- **To view a sent message**
  ① In Step 2, select *Sent msgs*
  ② Highlight a message, select *Options* → *View*
- **To view S! Mail details**
  In Step 3, highlight a message, select *Options* → *Details*

Message List Window

The following information appears in lists for each Messaging folder.



Received Message List

Tip

- **Received Message Indicators**
  : Unread S! Mail (Priority: High)
  : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Standard)
  : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Low)
  : Unread S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : Unread S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : Read S! Mail (Priority: High)
  : Read S! Mail (Priority: Standard)
  : Read S! Mail (Priority: Low)
  : Read S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : Read S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : Read S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : Unread reception notification (Priority: High)
  : Unread reception notification (Priority: Standard)
  : Unread reception notification (Priority: Low)
  : Read reception notification (Priority: High)
  : Read reception notification (Priority: Standard)
  : Read reception notification (Priority: Low)
  : Unread SMS
  : Read SMS
  : Unread SMS (saved in USIM Card)
  : Read SMS (saved in USIM Card)
  : Unread S! Mail Delivery Report
  : Read S! Mail Delivery Report
  : Unread SMS Delivery Report
  : Read SMS Delivery Report
  : Receiving S! Mail
- **Draft Message Indicators**
  : S! Mail (Priority: High)
  : S! Mail (Priority: Standard)
  : S! Mail (Priority: Low)
  : S! Mail (Priority: High; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : S! Mail (Priority: Standard; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : S! Mail (Priority: Low; Video and/or sound inserted)
  : SMS

- **Unsent Message Indicators**
  : S! Mail
  : S! Mail (Video and/or sound inserted)
  : SMS
  : Sending S! Mail
- **Sent Message Indicators**
  : S! Mail
  : S! Mail (Video and/or sound inserted)
  : SMS
  : SMS (saved in USIM Card)
- **Copyrighted file indicators**
  Attached/inserted copyrighted file indicators
  : Transferable, Content Key has already been purchased
  : Transferable, Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained
  : Nontransferable, Content Key has already been purchased
  : Nontransferable, Content Key has not been purchased or otherwise obtained
- **While Secret Mode is set to *Hide***
  Phonebook Secret Mode is set to *On* for message receiver/sender information; only the number or email addresses appear (instead of the name).

Message Window Operations

Saving to Phonebook

Save the phone number/mail address of the sender/recipient to Phonebook while displaying Message window (Received)/Reception notification window.

1 In Message window, select *Options* → *Add to Phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM*

2 Select *New* or *Update*

To save as a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

①Select *Update*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

3 Select an icon

4 Save other items (➲P.5-4)

5 Press w (Save)

Note

- **When an underlined phone number, mail address or URL is highlighted on a message window, *Add to Phonebook* does not appear in *Options*.**

Saving as an S! Mail Template

Save received or sent S! Mail as an S! Mail template.

1 In Message window, select *Options* → *Save as S! Mail template*

Tip

- **If a message appears indicating name duplication**
  ① Press c
  ② Press c (Select) and enter the name
  ③ Press w (Save)
- **When a name entry window has opened**
  ① Press c (Select) and enter the name
  ② Press w (Save)

Note

- **While displaying S! Mail sent from a PC or other devices, *Add to S! Mail template* does not appear in *Options*.**

Message Window Options

Item	Description
Play	Play Slide Show, inserted video, or sound (➲P.17-5).
Retrieved	Receive subsequent part of the notified message.
Reply	Reply to the sender of the reception notification.
Reply to all	Send reply to all entered S! Mail recipients.
Forward	Forward received message.
Download content key	Purchase or acquire Content Key.
Delete	Delete displayed messages.
Save as S! Mail template	Add displayed S! Mail as an S! Mail template (➲P.18-6).

Item	Description
Item copy	Save files attached or inserted in an S! Mail to Data Folder (➲P.18-14).
Add to Phonebook	Save number or mail address to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➲P.18-5).
Details	Confirm S! Mail size, etc.
3D Pict. Disp.	Display a message in 3D Pictogram (➲P.20-5).
Move to Phone/ USIM	Move an SMS received or being sent to handset or USIM Card (➲P.18-18).

Replying to a Message

1 Press W and select *Received msgs*

2 Highlight message, select *Options* → *Reply*

To reply to all recipients entered in the S! Mail

Highlight message, select *Options* → *Reply to all*

3 Create a message and press W (Send)

Tip

- **The subject of message replies**
  The subject of an S! Mail reply is prefixed with "RE:" automatically.
- **While *Reply with text* is set to *On***
  Under two line breaks, received message text is automatically entered in Text entry field.

Note

- **If free space of the shared memory (➲P.25-15) on 708SC is less than 464K bytes, you cannot reply to a message. To reply to the message, first delete unnecessary messages.**

Forwarding a Message

Forward a received or sent message to another recipient.

1 **Press w and select *Received msgs* or *Sent msgs***

2 **Highlight message, select *Options* → *Forward***

3 **Create a message and press w (Send)**

Tip

- **The subject of forwarded messages**
  The subject of a forwarded S! Mail is prefixed with "FW:" automatically.

Note

- **If free space of the shared memory (P.25-15) on 708SC is less than 464K bytes, you cannot forward a message. To forward the message, first delete unnecessary messages.**

Sending from Drafts

1 **Press w and select *Drafts***

2 **Highlight the message and press w (Send)**

When *Send* does not appear

①Press c (Edit)

②Enter address and press w (Send)

Sending from Unsent Messages

Send messages directly from Unsent Messages.

1 Press w and select *Unsent msgs*

2 Highlight the message and press w (Send)

To send after modifying

①Highlight the message, select *Options* → *Edit*

②Edit the message and press w (Send)

Deleting a Message

Deleting Specified Message(s)

Delete multiple specified messages. Alternatively, specify and delete saved templates.

1 Press w

2 Select a mailbox

To delete a saved S! Mail or SMS templates

Select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* or *SMS templates*

3 Delete a Message or Template

To delete one message or template

①Highlight the message or template

②Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple messages or templates

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

②Check a message or template to delete

③Repeat ② to check all of the target messages or templates

④Press w (Delete) and proceed to ⑥ when all are not checked

⑤Enter Phone Password and press c (Confirm)

⑥Select *Yes*

Tip

- **To view the contents of multiple messages or S! Mail templates while selecting them**
  ① Repeat Steps 1 and 2
  ② Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ③ Highlight message or S! Mail template, select *Options* → *View*
- **To collectively select/deselect multiple messages or S! Mail templates**
  ① Repeat Steps 1 and 2
  ② Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ③ Select *Options* → *Mark all* or *Unmark all*
- **To collectively select/deselect multiple SMS templates**
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ③ Press o (Mark all) or o (Unmark all)

Note

- **While highlighting an S! Mail template designated as default, *Delete* does not appear in *Options*.**

Designating & Deleting a Mailbox

1. **Press w to select *Settings* → *Delete all***
2. **Check a mailbox to delete**
3. **Repeat Step 2 to check all target mailboxes**
4. **Press w (Delete)**
5. **Enter Phone Password, and press c (Confirm) to select *Yes***

Deleting All Messages from a Mailbox

Delete saved templates all at once.

1 **Press** W

2 **Select a mailbox**

To delete an S! Mail or SMS template

Select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates* or *SMS templates*

3 **Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All***

4 **Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes***

Note

- **Personal folders cannot be deleted by this operation. To delete Personal folders, perform the following operations: *Messaging* → *Settings* → *Delete all***
- **You cannot delete the S! Mail template designated as the default.**

Linked Information

If Message window or Notification details window contains an underlined number, mail address, or URL; save it to Phonebook or use it to place a call, send messages, save bookmark, or access the site.

As linked information, following number of characters can be recognized for each S! Mail Font size setting:

Maximum of 45 lines (1,035 characters) for *Standard*,
54 lines (1,026 characters) for *Large*, and 41 lines (1,025 characters) for *Small*.

Saving to Phonebook

1 **In Message window, select a phone number, mail address, or URL and select *Add to phonebook* → *Phone* or *USIM***

2 **Select saving method to create a new entry or update an existing entry**

To save as a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

①Select *Update*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

3 **Select an icon**

4 **Save other items (➲P.5-4)**

5 **Press W (Save)**

Note

- **When you select a URL, you cannot select *USIM* in Step 1.**

Saving as a Bookmark

1 **In Message window, select a URL and select *Bookmark***

2 **Press C (Select) to enter a subject and press W (Save)**

Initiating a Call, Sending a Message, or Accessing the Web

Use phone number/mail address/URL information in Message window or Notification details window.

1 **In Message window, take procedures down below**

To initiate a Voice Call

Select a phone number and select *Voice call*

To initiate a Video Call

Select a phone number and select *Video call*

To send a message

①Select a phone number or mail address and select *Create msg*

②Create a message and press w (Send)

To access the Web

Select URL and select *Go to URL*

Tip

- **Operations in Notification details window**
  Phone number/mail address/URL information except in *From* (other party's phone number) can be used.

Using an Attachment

Viewing an Attachment

Open images/play sounds attached to S! Mail. For vCard/vCalendar, open Details to see contents.

1 Select a file and select *Open file*

Tip

- **To save a file in Data Folder directly**
  In Message window, select a file → *Save items*
- **To save vCard/vCalendar to Phonebook/Calendar directly**
  In Message window, select a file → *Register to Phonebook* or *Register to Calendar*
- **To register vCard/vCalendar to Phonebook/Calendar after viewing**
  ① Perform Step 1
  ② Press c (Register)

- **When a file requiring Content Key is attached**
  If you perform Step 1, a message appears and you cannot open the file. To view the file, select *Save items* in Step 1 to save and purchase/obtain Content Key from Data Folder (➔P.11-14).
- **When an attachment has a restriction (only one time playback allowed)**
  When you perform Step 1, a message appears notifying you that only one time playback is allowed).

Saving Attachments to Data Folder

Save S! Mail attachment/inserted files to 708SC.

1 In Message window, select *Options* → *Save items*

2 Perform file selection operation

To select and save one file

①Highlight a file

②Press c (Select) or select *Options* → *Selected*

To select and save multiple files

①Select *Options* → *Multiple*

②Check the files to save

③Repeat ② to check all target files

④Press w (Save)

To save all files

Select *Options* → *All*

Tip

- **To select or deselect multiple files at once**
  ① In Step 2, select *Options* → *Multiple*
  ② Press o (Mark all) or o (Unmark all)
- **When a popup message appears indicating the file name is a duplicate while saving**
  ① Press c
  ② Press c (Select) and change the file name
  ③ Press w (Save)

Note

- **When a file is highlighted in Message window, *Save items* does not appear in *Options*.**

Managing Folders

Create personal folders in Received msgs; organize and save in the folders for each mail types. Set own security setting for personal folders.

Create Folder

1. **Press W and select *Received msgs***
2. **Select *Options* → *Create folder***
3. **Enter a name**

Edit Folder

Change name for personal folders.

1. **Press W and select *Received msgs***
2. **Select *Options* → *Edit folder***
3. **Enter a name**

Security ON/OFF

Set Security setting for a personal folder; require Phone Password entry to check messages in the personal folder.

1. **Press W and select *Received msgs***
2. **Highlight the personal folder, select *Options* → *Security ON/OFF***
3. **Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm), then select *Yes***

Tip

- **Folder with Security setting**
  appears indicating Security setting has been selected.

- **With Security settings *On***
  Select personal folders; Phone Password entry window appears. Enter Phone Password and press c ; Message list window in the personal folder appears.

Moving Messages

1 Press w and select *Received msgs*

To move messages in personal folder to another personal folder

Select a personal folder

2 Highlight message, select *Options* → *Move this*

3 Select the destination folder

To resent messages to *Received msgs*

Select *Received msgs*

Delete Folder

1 **Press W and select *Received msgs***

2 **Highlight the personal folder, select *Options* → *Delete folder* → *Yes***

To select personal folder with Security setting *On*

Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)

3 **Select *Yes***

From Message List

Saving to Phonebook

1 **Press W and select *Received msgs*, *Unsent msgs* or *Sent msgs***

2 **Highlight message, select *Options* → *Add to Phonebook***

3 **Select a phone number or mail address and select *Phone* or *USIM***

4 **Select saving method to create a new entry or update an existing entry**

To save as a new entry

Select *New*

To save to an existing entry

① Select *Update*

② Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

5 **Select an icon**

6 **Enter additional items as required (➲P.5-4)**

7 **Press W (Save)**

Sorting Messages

Available sorting types to display vary by Message list window of the mailbox.

1 In Message list window, select *Options* → *Sort by*

2 Select an item

To sort in descending order of date

Select *Date*

To sort by sender

Select *Sender*

To sort by recipient

Select *Recipient*

To display read and unread messages separately

Select *Unread to read* or *Read to unread*

To display messages separately by message type

Select *Message type*

To sort by subject

Select *Subject*

To sort in descending order of message size

Select *Size*

Tip

- **Listing order when selecting *Message type***
  Listed in the order of SMS → S! Mail (Including message notification) → SMS saved in USIM Card.
- **Listing order when selecting *Sender*, *Recipient*, or *Subject***
  Listed in the order of single-byte symbol → single-byte number → single-byte alphabet → single-byte Katakana → double-byte symbol → double-byte Hiragana → double-byte Katakana → Kanji → double-byte number → double-byte alphabet. But if *Subject* is selected, messages with no subject are listed at the top.

Move to Phone/Move to USIM

Move received SMS or sent SMS.

Save up to ten messages to USIM Card.

1 Press W and select *Received msgs* or *Sent msgs*

2 Move messages

To move from USIM Card to 708SC

①Highlight an SMS saved on USIM Card

②Select *Options* → *Move to phone*

To move from 708SC to USIM Card

①Highlight an SMS saved in USIM Card

②Select *Options* → *Move to USIM*

Tip

- **Message List SMS Indicators**
  - : Unread SMS
  - : Read SMS
  - : Unread SMS (USIM Card)
  - : Read SMS (USIM Card)
  - : Sent SMS
  - : Sent SMS (USIM Card)
- **To move received SMS in personal folder to USIM Card**
  A confirmation message appears. Select *Yes* to complete the move.

Saving an S! Mail Template

For more information about saving an SMS template, see "SMS Templates" (➲P.4-16).

1 Press W and select *Templates* → *S! Mail templates*

2 Select *Options* → *Add new*

3 Select Subject field or Text entry field and enter a subject or message

4 Press W (Save)

Tip

- **To view an S! Mail template being created**
  In Step 3, select *Options* → *Preview*
- **To display and view an S! Mail template**
  In Step 2, highlight S! Mail template, select *Options* → *View*
- **To modify an S! Mail template**
  ① In Step 2, select a registered S! Mail template and perform modification operation
  ② Press W (Save)
- **To delete an S! Mail template**
  Perform the same operation as for a message (➲P.18-9).
- **To copy, cut, or paste characters (➲P.4-13)**
- **To use contents of an SMS template or Phonebook (➲P.4-11)**
- **To change the font size of characters being entered**
  ① In Step 3, select Text entry field, select *Options* → *Font Size*
  ② Select any of *Small*, *Standard*, or *Large*
- **To set/release the prediction entry function (➲P.4-14)**
- **Setting Slide Show/inserting a file**
  ① In Step 3, select *Options* → *Insert* or *Create & Insert*
  ② Perform setting, attaching, or inserting operation (➲P.17-13, 17-18, 17-20)
- **To view the text in 3D Pictogram**
  In Step 3, highlight Text entry field, select *Options* → *3D Pict. Disp.*

Message List Options

Item	Description
Retrieve	Retrieve complete S! Mail from the Server.
Reply	Reply to the sender (➲P.18-7).
Reply to all	Send reply to all entered S! Mail recipients (➲P.18-7).

Item	Description
Forward	Forward received message (➲P.18-8).
Move this	Move received mails to a personal folder (➲P.18-16).
Create folder	Create a personal folder (➲P.18-15).
Edit folder	Change personal folder name (➲P.18-15).
Security On/Off	With Security setting *On*, enter Phone Password to check mails in a personal folder (➲P.18-15).
Delete folder	Delete a personal folder (➲P.18-16).
View	Open sent messages or S! Mail templates (➲P.18-3, 18-19).
Edit	Edit unsent message (➲P.18-8).
Delete	Delete messages or templates (➲P.18-9, 18-11).
Move to phone/ Move to USIM	Move SMS between 708SC and USIM Card (➲P.18-18).
Sort by	Sort messages (➲P.18-17).
Add to Phonebook	Save number or mail address to Phonebook or USIM Card Phonebook (➲P.18-16).

Item	Description
Details	Check memory status in a personal folder or confirm S! Mail size, etc.
Cancel retrieving	Stop message retrieval from Mail Server.
Send	Send message using S! Mail template or SMS template (➲P.17-15).
Add new	Save a new S! Mail template or SMS template (➲P.4-16, 18-19).

Server Mail

Message List

View messages stored on the Mail Server in a list form. Retrieve, forward, or delete messages.

Acquire Mail List

1 **Press W and select *Server mail box***

2 **Select *Acquire Mail List***

Tip

- **To check Mail Server usage state**
  ① Select *Server mail volume* in Step 2
  ② Press C (Update) and select *Yes* to update to the latest information

Download

1 **Press W and select *Server mail box***

2 **Select *Mail List***

3 **Highlight the message, select *Options* → *Download***

Tip

- **To receive all messages from Message list window**
  In Step 2, select *Retrieve All Mail*

Delete

1 Press W and select *Server mail box*

2 Select *Mail List*

3 Delete unwanted messages

To delete one message

①Highlight a message

②Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple messages

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

②Check a message to delete

③Repeat ② to check all target messages to delete

④Press W (Delete) and go to ⑥ if unmarking all

⑤Enter Phone Password and press C (Confirm)

⑥Select *Yes*

To delete all messages

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All*

②Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes*

Tip

- **To select/deselect multiple messages at once**
  ① Perform Steps 1 and 2
  ② Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ③ Select *Options* → *Mark all* or *Unmark all*

Remote Forward

Forward a message from the Mail Server to another address. Contents except the address are sent without modification.

1 **Press W and select *Server mail box***

2 **Select *Mail List***

3 **Highlight message, select *Options* → *Remote Forward***

4 **Enter an address**

To directly enter an address

①Select Entry field and select *Enter Recipient*

②Enter a phone number or mail address

To enter an address using a log

Select Entry field and select a displayed log entry

To select an address from Phonebook

①Select Entry field and select *From Phonebook*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

③Highlight a phone number or mail address and press W (Select)

To select an address from Category of Phonebook

①Select Entry field and select *From Category*

② Select a Category, with/without an Address selection window, highlight an address and press W (Select)

5 Select *Options* → *Send*

Tip

- **Message subject**
  The subject of a forwarded message is prefixed with "FW:" automatically.
- **To set other sending options for a message being created**
  ① In Step 5, select *Options* → *Sending options*
  ② Select an item and perform operations to set (P.20-2)
  ③ Press W (Apply)
- **To delete an address**
  In Step 5, highlight a recipient, select *Options* → *Remove*
- **To change the address type to To, Cc, or Bcc**
  ① In Step 5, highlight a recipient, select *Options* → *Change recipients*
  ② Select any of *To*, *Cc*, or *Bcc*

Other Message Settings

Customizing Handset Address

Change your mail address (alphanumerics before @) used for sending and receiving S! Mail to/from PC, etc. The default account name consists of random alphanumerics.

1 Press W and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Mail Address setting*

2 Follow onscreen instructions

S! Mail Settings

Sending Settings

Default Setting	■Priority: Normal ■Expiration: Maximum ■Delivery: Immediately ■Request delivery report: Unchecked

Set options related to sending S! Mail. Alternatively, set sending options separately for each S! Mail to send
(➲P.17-13).

1 Press W and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Sending options*

2 Select an item and set

Message priority

①Select *Priority*

②Select a level and press C

Retention period (before expire) on the Mail Server

①Select *Expiration*

②Select an item and enter a time if you selected *Custom time* (*Hour*)

③Press C

Retention period (before delivery) on the Mail Server

①Select *Delivery*

②Select an item and press c

Delivery report request

Check *Request delivery report*

3 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **When the retention set in *Expiration* expires**
  The S! Mail is deleted automatically from the Mail Server.
- **When retention is set in *Delivery***
  When the specified time has elapsed, the S! Mail is sent from the Mail Server.
- **When *Request delivery report* is checked**
  When an S! Mail is sent from the Mail Server, a distribution report is sent to your handset.

Receiving Settings

Default Setting	■Home network: Manual ■Roaming network: Manual

Set options related to receiving S! Mail.

1 Press w and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Receiving options*

2 Select an item and set

To set the receiving method to use in Japan

①Select *Home network*

②Select an item and press c

To set the receiving method while overseas

①Select *Roaming network*

②Select an item and press c

3 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of *Home network* and *Roaming network* are:**
  Auto download: Receive automatically.
  Manual: Receive only reception notification.

Message Size

Default Setting	■300KB

Deactivate sending messages exceeding the specified size.

1 Press w and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* → *Message size*

2 Select an item and press c (Save)

Default Style

Default Setting	■Font color: Black ■Font size: Large ■Background color: White ■Slide interval: Custom time (3 seconds)

Set font color, font style, background color, and Slide Show time intervals. Alternatively, change display settings for each S! Mail sent (➲P.17-14).

1 Press w and select *Settings* → *S! Mail* →*Default style*

2 Set options

Font color

①Select *Font color*

②Use a to highlight a color and press c

To set a font size

①Select *Font Size*

②Select an item and press c

Background color

①Select *Background color*

②Use a to highlight a color and press c

Slide Show time intervals

①Select *Slide interval*

②Select an item, with *Custom time*, enter a time

③Press c

3 Press w (Save)

SMS Settings

Default Setting	▪Delivery report: Unchecked ▪Character support: Automatic

Set options related to sending SMS. Alternatively, set options for each SMS to send (➲P.17-13).

1 Press w and select *Settings* → *SMS*

2 Set options

Request a delivery report

Check *Delivery report*

Change the character set of fonts used in the text

①Select *Character support*

②Select an item and press c

3 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **When *Delivery report* is checked**
  When an SMS is sent from the Mail Server, a distribution report is sent to your handset.

3D Pictogram Settings

Default Setting	■Display type: New mails only ■Background: Pattern 1 ■Running Speed: Normal

3D Pictogram is a function that allows you to display in 3D animation for words, pictograms, or emoticons in message text.

Activate or deactivate 3D Pictogram or set the background color and display speed.

1 Press w and select *Settings* → *3D pictogram*

2 Set options

Whether to use 3D Pictogram

①Select *Display type*

②Select an item and press c (Save)

Background pattern and font colors

①Select *Background*

②Press s , display the pattern and press c (Save)

To set a display speed

①Select *Running speed*

②Select an item and press c (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of *Display type* are:**
  Always: Use 3D Pictogram when viewing every message.
  New mails only: Use 3D Pictogram only when viewing an unread message received.
  OFF: Not use 3D Pictogram.

Note

- **Such as file-attached/Slide Show set S! Mail may not appear properly in 3D Pictogram.**

Reply with text

Default Setting	■Off

When creating reply message, set to include received message text.

1 **Press W and select *Settings* → *Reply with text***

2 **Select an item and press C (Save)**

Tip

- **The contents of *Reply with text* are:**
  On: Reply with text including received message text.
  Off: Reply with text not including received message text.

Mobile Internet

Getting Started

Web

From a handset, access to Yahoo! Keitai and the Web to browse various sites or download images, sounds, etc.

A separate subscription is required to use the Web.

Accessing from the Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

From the Yahoo! Keitai main menu, select a menu items to access various contents.

Internet Accessing

Enter a URL and access pages.

SSL/TLS

Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) and Transport Layer Security (TLS) are encryption protocols for secure Internet transmissions of important/sensitive information (credit card numbers, etc.) and authentication. Confirm electronic certificates saved on 708SC (➲P.22-14, 23-4).

SSL/TLS Precautions

When a security notice appears, subscribers must decide for themselves whether or not to open the page. Opening secure pages constitutes agreement to the terms of usage. SOFTBANK MOBILE Corp., VeriSign Japan K.K., Betrusted Japan Co., Ltd., and Entrust Japan Co., Ltd. are not liable for damages associated with SSL/TLS use.

Cache

Retrieved Mobile Internet pages are temporarily saved here. Cache remains even after a session ends or 708SC is turned off. When full, oldest pages are automatically deleted to make room for new ones. When a saved page is opened again, it may open from Cache. For the latest version, reload the page (➲P.22-13).

Tip

- **To manually delete Cache contents (➲P.23-4)**
- **When another USIM Card is inserted into 708SC**
  Cache contents are automatically deleted.
- **When a page with an expiry date is saved**
  Page is automatically deleted upon expiry.

Getting Online

Yahoo! Keitai Main Menu

Access Mobile Internet sites via Yahoo! Keitai main menu

1 Press o

Alternatively, press o for 1+ seconds

Yahoo! Keitai menu appears. Select *Yahoo! Keitai* to open Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

2 Select an item

Tip

- **When accessing Mobile Internet for the first time**
  After Step 1, Time & date settings window appears; set time & date to display Information window.

Enter URL

1 **Press c and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Enter URL***

2 **Select URL field and enter a URL**

3 **Press w (Go to)**

Tip

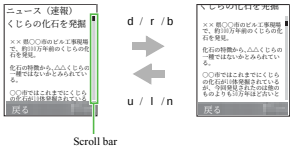
- **To save the entered URL as a bookmark**
  ① In Step 2, check *Add bookmark*
  ② Select Title field and enter title
  ③ Press w (Go to)
- **To access a page from the access history (➔P.22-11)**

Page Window Operations

Operations on pages are as follows.

Scrolling

Scroll bar appears when page content extends beyond current view.



d / r : Scroll down by one line

When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use r to scroll right

u / l : Scroll up by one line

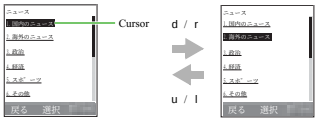
When a horizontal scroll bar appears, use l to scroll left

Side Key b : Scroll page down by multiple lines

Side Key n : Scroll page up by multiple lines

Moving Cursor

When selecting an item such as link, move cursor to that item.



d / r : When items are listed vertically, move cursor down

When the page is already scrolled to the bottom, alternatively, press Side Key b to move cursor down

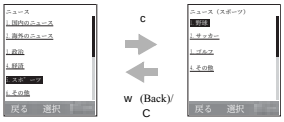
u / l : When items are listed vertically, move cursor up

When the page is already scrolled to the top, alternatively, press Side Key n to move cursor up

Tip

- **When items are listed in the same row**
  Press s to move cursor right or left.
- **When you move cursor**
  The selected item is highlighted or enclosed in a frame of dotted lines if it is link to another page.

Previous or Next Page



Highlight link, etc. and press c : Display the next page

Alternatively, select *Options* → *Forward* to change the window

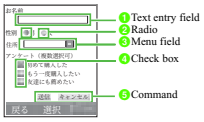
w (Back) or C : Display the previous page

Tip

- **If w (Back)/ C is pressed with no previous page displayed**
  A message appears asking whether to terminate the Web connection; select *Yes* to terminate the Web connection.

Text Entry/Item Selection

An information window may show fields and items given below.



1 Text entry field

Enter data, certification passwords, etc.; highlight Text entry field, press C and enter text

❷ Radio button

Select only one of the selection items. Highlight an item with ◯ and press c to select it (Appearing as ◉).

❸ Menu field

Display a menu and select an item. Highlight a menu, press c to display the menu. Use j to highlight the item and press c to select the item. When multiple items can be selected for Menu field, press C to cancel multiple selections.

❹ Check box

Select any number of selection items. Highlight an item with ☐ and press c to select it (Appearing as ☑). To deselect a selected item, highlight ☑ and press c .

❺ Command button

Perform operations assigned to a button such as *send* or *reset*. Highlight a command button and press c to execute the operation.

Note

- **The appearance of text entry or item selection varies by page opened.**

Using Linked Info

Use phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs contained on an page to initiate calls, create and send messages, and access other pages.

Available phone numbers, mail addresses, and URLs are underlined.

Using Page Links

1 Open a page containing linked info

2 Use the available links

To initiate a Voice Call

Select a phone number and select *Voice Call*

To create and send messages

①Select a phone number or mail address and select *Create message*

②Create messages and press W (Send)

To access another page

Select a URL

Saving to Phonebook

1 Open a page with linked number or address

2 Select a number or address and select *Save Number* or *Save Address* → *Phone* or *USIM*

3 Create a new entry or update an existing entry

To save as a new entry

Select *New*

To add to an existing entry

①Select *Update*

②Search for an existing entry to modify (➲P.5-9)

4 Select an icon

5 Save the item (➲P.5-4)

6 Press W (Save)

Mobile Internet Files

Using Image Files

Saving Images to Data Folder

Saving Linked Images

Download and save images from page links.

1 **Open a page containing an image link**

2 **Select link**

3 **Press** c

When details appear

Press c

4 **Press** C

To open the image

Press c (Launch)

To set saved image as Wallpaper

Press w (Set) and perform Step 3 in "Wallpaper" (➲P.22-3)

Saving Page Images

Save a page image to Data Folder.

1 **Open a page with an image**

2 **Select *Options* → *Save* → *Save image***

3 **Highlight the image and press** c **(Save)**

4 **Press** C

To open the image

Press c (Launch)

To set saved image as Wallpaper

Press w (Set) and perform Step 3 in "Wallpaper" (➲P.22-3)

5 **Press** C **to end the operation**

To save another image

Repeat Step 3

Tip

- **If the same file name exists**
  ① Press c (Edit) and change the file name
  ② Press w (Save)
- **Viewing images**
  Press w (Set as) to set Wallpaper. (➲P.22-3).
  Press c (Zoom) to enlarge or reduce the image.
  Press
  o (Details) to view image details.
- **When SVG-T/SWF format file is saved**
  Options appears on the save image confirmation window, then select *Options* and execute various operations
  (➲P.11-9).

Wallpaper

Set a saved image as Wallpaper.

1 Open image to set as Wallpaper (➲P.22-2)

2 Press w (Set as)

3 Select an item

To set as Wallpaper

①Select *Wallpaper*

②Press c (Set)

To set as incoming image for Phonebook entries

①Select *Caller ID*

②Search Phonebook and select an entry (➲P.5-9)

③Press c (Set)

To set as outgoing image

①Select *TV call Still picture*

②Press c (Save)

Note

- **For SVG-T/SWF format file, *Settings* does not appear. For Wallpaper, open Data Folder and open an image (P.11-9).**

Using Sound Files

Playing Sound

Play sounds from page links.

1 **Open a page containing link**

2 **Select link to sound**

Saving Sound Files to Data Folder

Download sound files from page links and save them to Data Folder.

1 **Open a page containing a sound link**

2 **Select link**

3 **Press** c

When details appear

Press c

4 **Select *Exit***

To play sound

Select *Launch*

Saving Sound Being Played

Save sound played in the background while viewing a page.

1 **Open a page with sound**

2 **Select *Options* → *Save* → *Save sound***

3 **Press** C

To play sound

Press c (Launch)

To set saved sound as Ringtone

Press w (Set as) and perform Step 3 in "Setting Sound File as Ringtone" (➲P.11-12)

Tip

- **If same file name exists**
  ① Press c (Edit) and change the file name
  ② Press w (Save)
- **To play sounds**
  Press w (Set as) and set saved sound as Ringtone (➲P.11-12). For other operations, refer to *Media Player* (➲P.10-3).

Options

The items listed vary by the window status.

Item	Description
Stop	Stop playing.
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.
Details	Confirm sound size, etc.
Player settings	Select settings related to Media Player (➲P.10-7).

Using Video Files

Playing a Video

Play video from a page link.

1 **Open a page containing a video link**

2 **Select link**

Saving Videos to Data Folder

Download and save videos from page links.

1 **Open a page containing a video link**

2 **Select link**

3 **Press c**

When details appear

Press c

4 **Press C**

To play video

Press c (Launch)

To set saved video as Ringtone

Press w (Set as) and perform Step 3 in "Setting Video File as Ringtone" (➲P.11-12)

Tip

- **If same file name exists**
  ① Press c (Edit) and change the file name
  ② Press w (Save)
- **To play video**
  Press w (Set as) and set saved video as Ringtone (➲P.11-12). For other operations, refer to *Media Player* (➲P.10-9).

Options

The items listed vary by the window status.

Item	Description
Resolution	Set video display size while playing or paused.
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.
Details	Set video display size while playing or paused.
Player settings	Select settings related to Media Player (➲P.10-12).

Streaming

Enjoy audio visual media while it downloads. Access compatible files via page links, etc. Downloaded content cannot be saved.

1 Open a page containing a streaming video link

2 Select link

Tip

- **To stream files**
  Operate the same as *Media Player* (➔P.10-3, 10-9).

Note

- **Even when use of streaming is temporarily stopped, communications continue, so packet communication fees continue.**

Options

The items listed vary by the window status.

Item	Description
Resolution	Set video display size while playing or paused.
Add bookmark	During accessing, save a page containing a streaming play link as a bookmark.
View bookmark	Access a page containing a streaming play link saved as a bookmark.
View history	Access a page containing a streaming play link already accessed.

Saving Pages

Saving a Page

Save a displayed page and open it at any time without accessing the Web. Up to 50 pages can be saved.

1. **Open a page**
2. **Select *Options* → *Saved pages* → *Save***

Opening a Saved Page

1. **Press c and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages***
2. **Select a page**

Change Title

1. **Press c and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages***
2. **Highlight a page, select *Options* → *Rename***
3. **Press c (Edit) and change the name**
4. **Press w (Save)**

Deleting a Saved Page

1 Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Saved pages*

2 Delete as required

To delete one page

①Highlight a page

②Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple pages

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

②Check a page to delete

③Repeat Step ② to check all target pages

④Press W (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all pages

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All*

②Enter Phone Password, press W (OK) and select *Yes*

Tip

- **To select/deselect multiple pages at once**
  ① In Step 2, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ② Select *Options* → *Selected/All*

Saving Bookmarks

Saving an Address as a Bookmark

By saving the Web addresses (URLs) of frequently used pages as bookmarks, access those pages. Up to 30 URLs can be saved as bookmarks.

1 Open a page

2 Select *Options* → *Bookmarks* → *Add to Bookmarks*

3 Check the title and URL

To change the title/URL

①Select Title or URL field

②Change a title or URL

4 Press w (Save)

Tip

- **To manually enter and save a bookmark**
  ① Press c and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*
  ② Select *Options* → *Add bookmark*
  ③ Select Subject field and enter a subject
  ④ Select URL field and enter a URL
  ⑤ Press w (Save)

Opening a Bookmark

1 Press c and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*

2 Select a bookmark

Tip

- **To send a bookmark URL in a message**
  ① In Step 2, highlight a bookmark, select *Options* → *Send URL*
  ② Create a message and press w (Send)

Editing Bookmarks

Modify the title or URL of bookmark.

1 Press c and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*

2 Highlight a bookmark, select *Options* → *Edit bookmark*

3 Select Title field or URL field, and modify the title or URL

4 Press w (Save)

Deleting a Bookmark

1 Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Bookmarks*

2 Delete as required

To delete one bookmark

①Highlight a bookmark

②Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple bookmarks

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

②Check a bookmark to delete

③Repeat ② to check all target bookmarks

④Press W (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all bookmarks

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All*

②Enter Phone Password, press W (OK) and select *Yes*

Tip

- **To select/deselect multiple bookmarks at once**
  ① In Step 2, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ② Select *Options* → *Selected/All*

History

The history records up to 50 URLs of accessed pages. Using the history, access pages previously accessed.

1 Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *History*

2 Use the history

To access a page from the history URL

Select URL

To delete a history URL

①Highlight the URL

②Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple histories

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

②Check a history to delete

③Repeat ② to check all target histories

④Press W (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all histories

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All*

②Enter Phone Password, press W (OK) and select *Yes*

Tip

- **To select/deselect multiple histories collectively**
  ① In Step 2, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ② Select *Options* → *Selected/All*

Display Settings

Rendering

Default Setting	■Standard

Set pages to match Display size or show only text.

1 Open a page

2 Select *Options* → *Rendering*

3 Select an item

To display a page without changing its layout

Select *Wide*

To display a page to fit Display

Select *Standard*

To display only page text

Select *Simple*

Search Text

1 **Display information window**

2 **Select *Options* → *Search text***

3 **Select Text entry field and enter the word**

4 **Select the searching direction and press w (Search)**

Copy Text

1 **Display information window**

2 **Select *Options* → *Copy Text***

3 **In a text entry window, select *Options* → *Copy***

4 **Use a to move cursor on the first character and press c (Start)**

To copy all texts in text entry window

Press o (All) to copy

5 **Use a to specify the range and press c (End)**

Reload

1 **Open a page**

2 **Select *Options* → *Reload***

Page Details

View current page information including URL and page title.

1. **Open a page**
2. **Select *Options* → *Browser setting* → *Page details***

Send URL

Attach the URL of the current page to a message and send it.

1. **Open a page**
2. **Select *Options* → *Send URL***
3. **Create a message and press W (Send)**

Server Certificate

View server certificates of a page using a SSL/TLS connection.

1. **Open a secure page**
2. **Select *Options* → *Browser setting* → *Certificates***
3. **Select *Server certification* and select a certificate**

Tip

- **When you open a page that uses SSL/TLS** appears on the top of Display.

Returning to Default Page

Return to the Yahoo! Keitai main menu.

1 **Open a page**

2 **From any page, select *Options* → *Yahoo! Keitai***

Encoding

Default Setting	■Auto

If page text appears garbled, change character encoding.

1 **Open a page**

2 **Select *Options* → *Browser setting* → *Encoding***

3 **Select an option and press C (Save)**

Information Window Options

Item	Description
Forward	Move to the next information window (➲P.21-5).
Bookmark	Add or open bookmarks (➲P.22-9).
Saved pages	Save information windows to Saved pages. Display information window from Saved pages (➲P.22-8, 22-8).
Text search	Search text in information window (➲P.22-13).
Reload	Reload the information for a page (➲P.22-13).
Enter URL	Enter a URL to open another site/page (➲P.21-4).
Rendering	Change the displaying method for pages (➲P.22-15).
Copy text	Copy text in information window (➲P.22-13).
Save	Save images and sounds to Data Folder (➲P.22-2, 22-4).

Item	Description
Send URL	Send URLs of a page in a message (➲P.22-14).
History	Access a page you have already visited (➲P.22-11).
Yahoo! Keitai	Return to the Yahoo! Keitai main menu (➲P.22-15).
Browser setting	Make detailed settings for Web Browser.
Text size	Set text size in information window (➲P.23-3).
Downloads	Set various settings for image/sound downloads (➲P.23-2).
Empty cache	Delete all information from the cache.
Empty cookies	Delete all cookies (tokens left by various Web sites on your handset).
Cookie options	Activate or deactivate cookies.
Certificates	View the certificate (➲P.22-14, 23-4).
Page details	View the detailed information about a page (➲P.22-14).

Item	Description
Manufacture No.	Set whether to notify a Web site of your handset's serial number.
Encoding	Change the character codes set for the page currently displayed (➲P.22-15).
Java Script	Set Java Script on/off (➲P.23-3).
About browser	View detailed information about the browser.

Other Web Settings

Preferences

Default Setting	■Display images: Checked ■Play sound: Checked

Set 708SC to deactivate embedded images/sounds when opening pages. Pages download more quickly without image and sound data.

1 Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings* → *Downloads*

2 Perform operations to set

To deactivate images

①Select *Display images*

②Select an item and press W (Save)

To deactivate sounds

①Select *Play sound*

②Select an item and press W (Save)

Security

Cookie Options

Default Setting	■Accept all

Activate or deactivate Cookies that allow information providers to automatically record information identifying handset user. User information, access date, and other information are saved in Cookies.

1 Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings* → *Cookie options*

2 Select an item and press C (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of *Cookie options* are:**
  Accept all: Always accept Cookies.
  Reject all: Always reject Cookies.
  Prompt: Confirm Cookies each time they appear.

Activating/Deactivating Java Script

Default Setting	■Off

1 **Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings* → *Java script***

2 **Select an item and press C (Save)**

Text Size

Default Setting	■Normal

Change the size of the page fonts.

1 **Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings* → *Text size***

2 **Select an item and press C (Save)**

Manufacture Number

Default Setting	■Off

Set 708SC to automatically send handset serial number to Websites upon request for user identification.

1. **Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings* → *Manufacture number***
2. **Select an item and press C (Save)**

Browser Information

1. **Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings* → *About browser***

Certificates

View electronic certificate saved on 708SC.

1. **Open a page using SSL/TLS**
2. **Select *Options* → *Browser setting* → *Certificates***
3. **Select *Root certificate* to view the certificate**

Refresh Browser

Empty Cache/Empty Cookies

Delete information saved in Cache and Cookies.

1 **Press C and select *Yahoo! Keitai* → *Browser settings***

2 **Delete as required**

To delete Cache contents

Select *Empty cache* → C (Yes)

To delete Cookies

Select *Empty cookies* → C (Yes)

S! Appli

Getting Started

S! Appli

Download 708SC-compatible S! Appli including games, 3D images, and information via Mobile Internet sites.

- Use only compatible S! Appli.
- To download S! Appli, separate subscription is required and communication fees apply.

Network S! Appli

Some S! Appli require network connection. Enjoy network gaming or access real-time information like stock prices.

- A separate subscription is required to download S! Appli or use those which require network connection.
- Connection fees apply.

Downloading S! Appli

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list***

2 **Select *Download S! Appli***

3 **Select S! Appli to download**

4 **Select *Yes***

When details appear

Press C

5 **Select *Exit***

To activate S! Appli

Select *Launch*

Starting S! Appli

1 **Press c and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list***

2 **Select S! Appli and press c (Start)**

Tip

- **When S! Appli is active**
  appears.

Exit, Pause, & Resume

Exiting or Pausing S! Appli

1 **Press y while a S! Appli is being executed**

2 **Choose to exit/pause**

To exit S! Appli

Press w (Exit)

To pause S! Appli

Press c (Pause)

Tip

- **When S! Appli is paused**
  708SC returns to Standby and appears.
- **When 708SC is closed while S! Appli is active**
  S! Appli is paused.

Restarting a Paused S! Appli

1 **In Standby with S! Appli paused, press C and select *S! Appli***

2 **Press W (Resume)**

Managing S! Appli

Details

Open *Details* to confirm S! Appli properties.

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list***

2 **Highlight a S! Appli, select *Options* → *Details***

Tip

- **S! Appli properties**
  Open *Details* to see following properties:
  Name, Description, Profiles, Certification, Size, Record Size, Version, and Vendor.

Lock/Unlock

Lock S! Appli to prevent accidental deletion.

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list***

2 **Highlight S! Appli, select *Options* → *Lock***

Tip

- **Locked S! Appli Indicator**
  In S! Appli list, 🔒 appears.
- **To cancel lock**
  In Step 2, highlight locked S! Appli, select *Options* → *Unlock*

Delete

1 Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list*

2 Delete S! Appli

To delete one S! Appli

Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Selected* → *Yes*

To delete multiple S! Appli

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*

②Check S! Appli to delete

③Repeat Step ② to check all target S! Appli

④Press W (Delete) and select *Yes*

To delete all S! Appli

①Select *Options* → *Delete* → *All*

②Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes*

③Select *Yes* to delete all S! Appli or *No* to exclude locked ones

Tip

- **When all S! Appli are checked**
  In Step 2, perform ① to ③ in "To delete multiple S! Appli," press W (Delete) in ④ and proceed the following procedures
  ① Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes*
  ② Select *Yes* to delete all S! Appli or *No* to exclude locked ones
- **To select/deselect multiple S! Appli at once**
  ① In Step 2, select *Options* → *Delete* → *Multiple*
  ② Select *Options* → *Mark all* or *Unmark all*

mPet

With 708SC mPet, raise your own virtual pet. Train or enjoy playing games with.

Selecting Pet

1 Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list* → *mPet* → *Yes*

2 Use S to select the pet and press C (Select)

To select pet after checking action

Select *Options* → *animate* and press C (Select)

To select pet after checking direction

Select *Options* → *turn* and press C (Select)

3 Enter a name

4 Select *Yes* and press C

mPet Window

Tip

- **After selecting your pet**
  Garden appears. Train or tame in this location. Play game with in other rooms. Activating mPet shows the location last used.
- **Pet action in mPet window**
  After a while with no action to pet; pet starts to play alone, bark, shows it's emotional text bubble. With low battery, pet gets down and starts sniffing.
- **To end mPet**
  Press C or y
- **To set mPet as Wallpaper (P.8-2)**
- **mPet Help**
  Use mPet Help to see other operations. In mPet window, select *Options* → *Help* or press o while *Help* appears

mPet Operations

Window Operations

In *Options*, set *Navigation* to *Shortcut mode*, then press corresponding button to select operation; set *Navigation* to *Walking mode*, then use a to move pet to specified location and select operation. Available operations in each location are listed below.

Location	Operation		Description
	Shortcut mode	Walking mode (Window area)	
Garden	1	Notes (Upper Left)	Play the *Ding Dong* game.
	2	Front Door (Upper)	Move to Living Room.
	3	Flower Bed (Upper Right)	Go for a walk.
	4	Ball (Down Right)	Play the *Stanza* game.
Living Room	1	Door (Upper Left)	Move to Garden.
	2	Back Door (Upper Right)	Move to Kitchen.

Location	Operation		Description
	Shortcut mode	Walking mode (Window area)	
Kitchen	1	Back Door (Upper Left)	Move to Living Room.
	2	Door (Upper Right)	Move to Bed Room.
	3	Bowl (Down Right)	Feed full meal.
	4	Today's Saying (Down Left)	Display Today's Saying.
	5	Snacks (Upper)	Give snacks.
Bed Room	1	Door (Upper Left)	Move to Kitchen.
	2	Laundry Basket (Upper)	Bathe pet.
Bed Room	3	Dog House (Upper Right)	Pet sleeps.
	4	Book (Down Right)	Play English Quiz.
	5	Injector (Down Left)	Cure pet.

Action Operations

In mPet window, press w (Action) to perform the operations listed below (*Train*/*Commend*/*Discipline*). Pet growth varies by operations.

Item		Description
Train	Sit	Teach pet to sit down.
	Roll	Teach pet to roll over.
	Turn	Teach pet to turn around.
	Bark	Teach pet to bark.
	Paw	Teach pet to give you a paw.
Commend	Praise	Praise pet for good behavior.
	Pet	Cheer pet up.
Discipline	Warn	Order pet not to do.
	Punish	Punish pet for bad behavior.

Tip

- **When pet refuse to act**
  Pet sometimes refuse to act as operated, due to such as the first time operation, pet status. Teach pet repeatedly or check the status and take care.
- **When each operation ends**
  Pet barks and responds to operation with emotional state text bubble; pet status window appears. Check the pet status by following category: *Health*/*Fatigue*/*Fullness*/*Clean*/*Stress*/*Obedient*/*Intimacy.*

Options

Item	Description
Location	Select a location from among *Garden*/*Living room*/*Kitchen*/*Bedroom*.
Pet Inventory	Show Pet list to select various settings (➲P.24-9).
Pet Status	Check Pet status while pet is playing around.
Options	Select mPet sound/display settings (➲P.24-10).
Help	Check mPet operations description.

Other Operations

Adopt a New Pet

Up to 5 pets can be adopted.

1. **In mPet window, select *Options* → *Pet Inventory***
2. **Select *Options* → *Adopt a new pet***

3 **Perform Steps 2 and 3 in "Select Pet" (P.24-5)**

Pet Inventory

1 **In mPet window, select *Options* → *Pet Inventory***

2 **Select a pet**

Tip

- **Pet status**
  In Step 2, select *Options* → *View status*
- **Rename your pet**
  ① In Step 2, highlight the pet
  ② Select *Options* → *Rename*
  ③ Enter a name

Say Goodbye

1 **In mPet window, select *Options* → *Pet Inventory***

2 **Highlight the pet and select *Options* → *Say Goodbye***

3 **Press o (Yes)**

4 **Press c**

Note

- **Note that once gave up your pet, unable to restore it.**

mPet Sound & Settings

Default Setting	■Sound: Sound only ■Navigation: Shortcut mode ■Sound type: Voice

1 In mPet window, select *Options* → *Options*

2 Perform operations to set

To set pet sound

①Select *Sound*

②Select an item and Press c

To set operation mode

①Select *Navigation*

②Select an item and Press c

To set action menu sound

①Select *Sound type*

②Select an item and Press c

3 Press c

Tip

- **The contents of *Sound* are:**
  Sound & Vibrate: Pet barks and 708SC vibrates simultaneously.
  Sound only: Pet barks.
  Vibrate: 708SC vibrates with no pet barking.
  No sound: No vibration and with no pet barking.
- **The contents of *Navigation* are:**
  Shortcut mode: Show available shortcuts indicators in mPet window to use assigned shortcuts keys.
  Walking mode: Use a to move locations with the pet.
- **The contents of *Sound type* are:**
  Voice: Indicate the selected action operation by voice.
  Melody: Indicate the selected action operation by melody.

Comic Surfing

"コミックサーフィン" is the file viewer for browsing electronic comic/photo book files (CCF files) saved in *Book* folder in Data Folder. Enlarge/

reduce images, scroll the page easily, browse more lively images with sound/vibration effects.

To browse CCF files, acquire Content Key. No Content Key is required to browse the default sample files in 708SC.

Browsing Electronic Comic

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! application list***

→ コミックサーフィン

Tip

- **After starting**
  Refer to ヘルプ in コミックサーフィン.

Security

Default Setting	■Net Access: Per session ■Application Autoinvocation: Per session ■Local connectivity: Per session ■Read user data access: Per access ■Write use data access: Per access

Set whether to allow S! Appli to automatically use communication functions. Alternatively, set to display a confirmation message when activating S! Appli or using communications.

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Application list***

2 **Highlight S! Appli, select *Options* → *Permissions***

3 **Select items to set**

Web accessing functions

Select *Net Access*

Automatic starting functions

Select *Application Autoinvocation*

Connection functions to external devices

Select *Local connectivity*

Read user data access function

Select *Read user data access*

Write user data access function

Select *Write user data access*

4 Select items and press C (Save)

Tip

- **The contents of *Permissions* are:**
  Setting for each item are as follows. Settings vary by item.
  Always: Always allow the use of the function.
  Per session: After activating, S! Appli asks, for the first use, whether to allow the use of the function. Display this message only once.
  Per access: Every time you use a function, display a message for confirmation.
  Never: Never allow the use of the function.
- **To restore defaults**
  In Step 3, select *Reset* → *Yes*

S! Appli Settings

Make S! Appli settings and restore defaults.

Backlight

Default Setting	■Normal settings

Set Display settings for the backlight.

1 **Press c and select *S! Appli* → *S! Appli settings* → *Backlight***

2 **Select the setting and press c**

Tip

- **The contents of *Backlight* are:**
  Always On: Set the backlight always on.
  Always Off: Set the backlight always off.
  Normal settings: Settings of *Backlight time* (➔P.8-8) for *Display settings* take priority.

Application Volume

Default Setting	■Level 3

Adjust the volume of sounds.

1 **Press c and select *S! Appli* → *S! Appli settings* → *Application Volume***

2 **Use a to adjust the volume and press c**

Tip

- **Sound volume in Manner Profile**
  Sound volume follows the settings of the current Manner Profile.

Vibration

Default Setting	■On

Set whether or not to active the vibration when using S! Appli with vibrator.

1 **Press c and select *S! Appli* → *S! Appli settings* → *Vibration***

2 **Select an item and press c**

S! Appli Sort

Default Setting	■By Date

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Appli settings* → *S! Appli sort***

2 **Select an item and press C**

Reset S! Appli Settings

Restore S! Appli settings to defaults.

1 **Press C and select *S! Appli* → *S! Appli settings* → *Reset S! Appli settings***

2 **Enter Phone Password, press C (Confirm) and select *Yes***

Appendix

Functions

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
S! Appli	S! Application list	P.24-2
	S! Appli Settings	P.24-13
Yahoo! Keitai	Yahoo! Keitai	P.21-3
	Bookmarks	P.22-10
	Saved pages	P.22-9
	Enter URL	P.21-4
	History	P.22-12
	Browser settings	P.23-2
Media Player	Music	P.10-3
	Video	P.10-9
Camera	Take photo	P.7-5
	Record video	P.7-11
	Go to photos	P.7-6
	Go to videos	P.7-12
	Dynamic effect list	P.7-19
	Video editor	P.7-17

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
Data Folder	Pictures	P.11-2
	Videos	P.11-2
	Sounds & Ringtones	P.11-2
	S! Appli	P.11-2
	Book	P.11-2
	Other documents	P.11-2
	Memory status	P.11-3
Messaging	Received msgs	P.17-4, 18-2
	Create msg	P.17-9
	Drafts	P.18-8
	Unsent msgs	P.18-9
	Sent msgs	P.18-8
	Templates	P.17-15
	Server mail box	P.19-2
	Settings	P.20-2, 20-5
	Memory status	P.18-2

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
Tools	Alarms	P.14-2
	Calendar	P.14-5
	Voice recorder	P.14-16
	World clock	P.14-19
	Calculator	P.14-21
	Converter	P.14-21
	Stopwatch	P.14-24
	Dictionary	P.14-24
	Photo slide	P.8-3
	Interpreter	P.14-25
	Memory status	P.14-13
Phonebook	Phonebook List	P.5-9

Main Menu Item	Item	Page
Settings	Phone settings	-
	Sound settings	P.9-4
	Display settings	P.8-1
	Call settings	-
	Phonebook settings	P.5-1
	Connectivity	P.12-1
	Security	P.13-1
	Software Update	P.25-10
	Memory settings	P.13-11, 15-9

Troubleshooting

708SC does not turn on

☑ Is battery empty?

➡ Replace or charge battery.

☑ Is battery installed in 708SC?

➡ Install battery correctly.

When power is turned on, PIN entry window appears

☑ Is *PIN lock* set to *Enable*?

➡ If *PIN lock* is *Enable*, enter PIN.

When power is turned on, USIM password entry window appears

☑ Is *USIM lock* set to *Enable*?

➡ If *USIM lock* is *Enable*, enter USIM password.

Please insert USIM card or *This card cannot be recognized* appears when 708SC is turned on or executing a function

☑ Is USIM Card correctly installed?

➡ Check to see if USIM Card is correctly installed. If the message appears even though USIM Card is correctly installed, it may be damaged.

☑ Is an incorrect USIM Card used?

➡ Check to see if correct USIM Card is used. Use USIM Card specified by SoftBank.

☑ Are the IC contacts of USIM Card contaminated with fingerprints, etc.?

➡ Wipe contamination off with a clean, dry cloth, and install USIM Card correctly.

Reading USIM Cannot operate or *Reading USIM Card Cannot start* appears

➡ USIM Card data is being read. Try again later.

A Busy tone continues after dialing

☑ Have you entered a phone number beginning with zero such as an area code?

➡ Enter a phone number beginning with zero such as an area code.

☑ Is 708SC set to *Offline mode*? (appears)

➡ Change 708SC to another mode such as *Normal*.

or Out appears and no calls can be initiated

☑ 708SC is out-of-range.

➡ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

Calls are interrupted or disconnected

☑ Does or Out appear?

➡ Move to a place where the signal is stronger and try again.

☑ Is battery empty?

➡ Replace or charge battery.

Unable to initiate a call

☑ Is Call Barring set?

➡ Deactivate Call Barring.

Unable to open Phonebook entry, Data Folder, Call Log, Calendar, or Messaging

☑ Is Privacy lock set?

➡ Cancel Privacy lock.

Clicking noise is heard during a call

☑ Noise may be generated when the signal is weak or while moving between coverage areas.

Unable to charge battery

☑ Is AC Charger Connector securely inserted into 708SC?

➡ Insert AC Charger Connector securely.

☑ Is AC Charger securely inserted into an electric outlet?

➡ Insert AC Charger securely.

☑ Is battery installed in 708SC?

➡ Install battery correctly.

☑ Are the charging terminals of 708SC, battery or the connector plug of AC Charger clean?

➡ Clean the contacts with a dry cotton swab, etc.

☑ Has battery been charged in places with ambient temperature below 5 ºC or above 40 ºC.

➡ Charge battery in places with ambient temperature between 5 ºC and 40 ºC.

☑ Battery may need to be replaced.

➡ Replace with a new battery.

☑ Does battery always lose its charge quickly after being charged?

➡ Battery life has expired. Replace with a new battery.

☑ Does 708SC or battery become very warm during charging?

➡ If the temperature rises too much, charging may stop. After 708SC and battery are cool, retry charging.

Devices become hot

☑ During charging, AC Charger may become hot.

☑ 708SC may become hot during charging or a long call.

➡ If 708SC can be touched with your hand, it is normal. If it is too hot to touch, immediately stop charging and contact Customer Service (➲P.25-25).

Battery drains quickly

☑ Battery may drain quickly depending on the operating environment (Ambient temperature, charging conditions, or Signal Strength), operations, and settings.

➡ Use 708SC in an appropriate environment and reduce operations requiring high power (➲P.1-14).

Display flickers

☑ Is 708SC used near a fluorescent light?

➡ Use 708SC as far away from a fluorescent light as possible.

Display is dim or unlit

☑ This may be due to the characteristics of Display and not a problem. The time (seconds) until Display is dimmed or unlit

can be changed by adjusting the Backlight time.

Unable to play music through the speaker

☑ Is Manner Profile set?

➡ Cancel Manner Profile.

☑ Is the stereo earphone microphone connected?

➡ Disconnect the connector for the stereo earphone microphone from 708SC.

***Too many applications are already running, thus unable to launch anymore* appears**

☑ Memory is low or full.

➡ Delete unnecessary S! Mail messages. If multiple functions are active, close some of them.

Unable to establish Bluetooth® or USB connections using Samsung PC Studio

☑ Is the USB driver installed? (for USB connection)

➡ If communications are executed connecting to a personal computer with the supplied USB cable, installing the driver is required. Install the driver from the supplied CD-ROM.

☑ Is the connection method set correctly on the personal computer?

➡ Set the connection method to *USB* or *Bluetooth* on the Connection Manager of Samsung PC Studio or the Connection Wizard for the communication in use.

☑ Are the settings of Bluetooth® or the USB connection port of the PC same as those for Samsung PC Studio?

➡ Make sure port settings match those set for Samsung PC Studio Connection Manager or Connection Wizard.

Some Phonebook entries do not appear

☑ Is 708SC set to *Hide* in Secret Mode?

➡ Set to *Show* in Secret Mode.

Message cannot be created

☑ Shared Memory may be full.

➡ Delete unnecessary messages. If available memory is less than 464 KB, messages cannot be created.

Try again appears

☑ Signal conditions are poor.

➡ Move for a stronger signal and try again.

Sending message failed or *Unknown error* appears

☑ Network connection failed.

➡ Try again later.

All available connections are busy appears

☑ New S! Mail arrives while 708SC is being used for packet data communications.

➡ End the data communication and try again.

Service unavailable appears

☑ 708SC is outside the service area.

➡ Send from within the service area.

No response appears

☑ Network/Server is busy.

➡ Try again later.

Change from flight profile to other profile for network service, created message will be saved in outbox appears

☑ *Offline mode* is active.

➡ Cancel *Offline mode* and try again.

Cannot download because of too large data appears

☑ S! Appli memory is full.

➡ Delete unnecessary S! Appli and try again.

Received invalid data. Quit download or *Cannot download because of too large data* appears

➡ File cannot be downloaded; cancel download.

Software Update

Check for 708SC software updates and download as required. Choose to begin *Update* or *Schedule update*.

1 Press C and select *Settings* → *Software update*

2 Press W (Yes)

708SC connects to network.

3 Read Terms of Use and select *Agree*

Read through Terms of Use before selecting *Agree*.

4 Enter Center Access Code (➲P.1-26) and press C

Update Result appears.

5 Press C

To update immediately

Select *Update now* to start the update. When completed, 708SC turns the power off and on again; then Notification window appears.

Notification Window

To schedule later update

①Select *Schedule update*
②Press C (Yes)
③Press W (Yes)
④Select schedule date and press C
⑤Select schedule time and press C
⑥Confirm schedule date & time and press C

Tip

- **Operation procedures**
  Procedures can be found in the SoftBank Website (http://www.softbank.jp).
- **Connection fees**
  Connection fees do not apply to updates (including checking for updates, downloading, and rewriting).

- **Scheduled update time comes**
  Confirmation window appears at scheduled update time. Press c or wait approximately ten seconds to start. Update will not start while 708SC is in use. When the current operation ends, confirmation window appears. But other functions active, and ten minutes after scheduled update time, scheduled update is automatically canceled.

Notification Window

- **To cancel *Schedule update***
  ① Perform Steps 1 to 5, select *Cancel schedule*
  ② Press w (Yes)

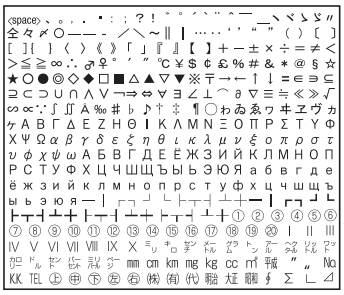
Note

- **Charge battery beforehand; a low battery may cause update to fail.**
- **When Scheduled update time comes and 708SC is out-of-range, Software Update does not start.**
- **Keep 708SC in a place where signal is strong and stable.**
- **708SC Phonebook entries, media files, and other contents are not affected by software updates, but always back-up important information (note that some files cannot be copied). SoftBank is not liable for damages from lost information, etc.**
- **During update, calling or receiving messages, etc. cannot be used.**
- **Update may take for a while.**
- **Update failure may disable 708SC. Contact SoftBank Customer Center, Customer Assistance.**

Symbols & Pictograms

Symbols

Double-byte Symbols



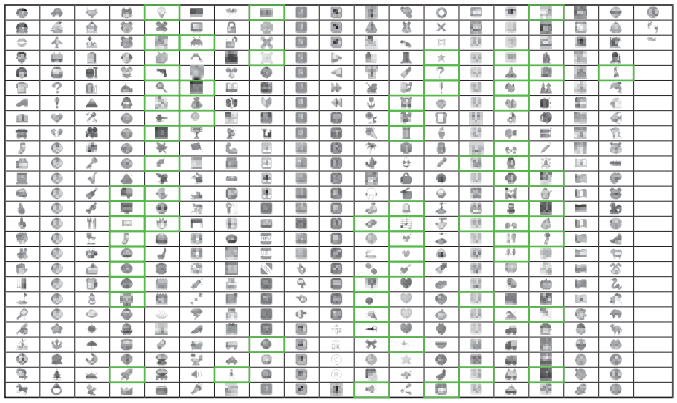
Single-byte Symbols

<space> ! ” # $ % & ’ ( ) * + , − . / : ; < = > ?
@ [¥] ^ _ ` { | } ~ 。「 」、・ − ゛ ゜

Symbol Conversions

Symbol Label	Symbol	Symbol Label	Symbol
あっと	@@	こめ	※
いこーる	＝=	ころん	： ；
えん	¥	さんかく	△▲▽▼
おんぷ	♪	しかく	□■◇◆
かける	×	どう	ゝ〃々
かっこ	()「」『』【】〈〉 []‘ “ ”()〔〕 ［］｛｝〈〉《》	ぱーせんと	%%
		ほし	☆★
		まる	○●◎
から	～	やじるし	→←↑↓

Pictograms



- Pictograms with [ ] are animated.

- Some pictograms and animated pictograms may not appear properly on some models of SoftBank handsets or other devices.

Memory List

Shared Memory		
S! Mail	Received msgs	Up to 500 messages
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages
	Unsent msgs	Up to 10 messages
	Sent msgs	Up to 250 messages
SMS	Received msgs	Up to 500 messages
	Drafts	Up to 10 messages
	Unsent msgs	Up to 10 messages
	Sent msgs	Up to 250 messages
Data Folder	Pictures	Up to 999 items (files and subfolders) per folder
	Videos	
	Sounds & Ringtones	
	S! Appli	
	Book	
	Other documents	

Specifications

708SC specifications may change without prior notice.

SoftBank 708SC

Item	Specification
Weight	Approximately 97 g
Continuous Talk Time	Voice Call: Approximately 165 minutes (3G) Approximately 310 minutes (GSM) Video Call: Approximately 100 minutes (3G)
Continuous Standby Time (708SC closed and sub Display OFF)	Approximately 255 hours (3G) Approximately 300 hours (GSM)
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 51.4 x 102.5 x 11.9 mm (708SC closed)
Maximum Output	0.25 W

- 708SC with battery installed.

- Battery Time is calculated by SoftBank under stable signal conditions. Calling in poor signal conditions or leaving 708SC on out-of-range will consume more power and may reduce Battery Time by more than half.
- Frequent 708SC operations requiring Backlight (e.g., Yahoo! Keitai) may reduce Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time.
- Using video for Wallpaper may significantly reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Using S! Appli may reduce Continuous Talking and Continuous Standby Times.
- Continuous Talk Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery in stable signal conditions. Continuous Standby Time is an average measured with a new, fully charged battery with 708SC closed without calls or operations, in Standby, in stable signal conditions. Alternating between usage and Standby shortens Continuous Talk Time and Continuous Standby Time. Talk Time/Standby Time may vary by environment (battery status, ambient temperature, etc.).

Battery

Item	Specification
Voltage	3.7 V
Type	Lithium-ion
Capacity	880 mAh
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 46.3 x 36.9 x 5.2 mm (without protruding parts)

AC Charger

Item	Specification
Power Source	AC 100 V-240 V, 50/60 Hz (with power cable)
Output Voltage/ Current	DC 5 V/720 mA
Charging Temperature	5 to 40 ºC
Dimensions (W x H x D)	Approximately 53 x 49 x 20 mm (without cables)
Cord Length	Approximately 180 cm

INDEX

A

AC Charger 1-14
Acoustic shock 15-5
Activate Secret mode 13-6
Activating Bluetooth® 12-4
Activating S! Appli 24-3
Active Folder 15-6
Add to playlist 10-5
Adding Reject Black List 13-9
Adjusting earpiece volume 2-7
Adjusting ringtone volume 2-3, 6-3
Adjusting volume level to play 10-7, 10-12
Alarms 14-2
All music 10-3
Anniversary 14-9
Answer Machine 2-5
Answering mode 12-9
Anykey answer 15-5
Applicable Profiles for Bluetooth® 12-2
Attaching files 18-13
Attaching to a message for sending still images 7-20
Attaching to a message for sending videos 7-20, 11-13
Attaching/Inserting a file 17-15
Audio Skin 10-7
Auto power ON 14-4
Auto redial 15-2

B

Backlight 8-7, 10-8, 24-13
Battery 1-10, 1-12
Bluetooth® 12-2
Bluetooth® Address 12-3
Bluetooth® service 12-3
Browser Information 23-3

C

Cache 21-2
Calculator 14-19
Calendar 14-5
Calendar window format 14-6
Call answer mode 9-3
Call cost limit 2-12
Call Log Records 2-9
Call Transfer service 16-3
Call Waiting 16-8
Caller ID 16-13
Camera 7-2
Camera mode 7-4
Camera setting 7-13
Capturing continuous images 7-8
Capturing in Mosaic shot 7-9
Capturing mode 7-4
Capturing still images 7-5
Capturing videos 7-10
Category 5-7
Centre access code 1-23
Certificates 22-16, 23-4
Changing a file name 11-15
Changing a folder name 11-15, 18-15
Changing mail address 20-2
Changing phone password 13-2

Changing PIN 13-2
Changing PIN2 13-2
Changing profile 3-3
Changing settings of each profile 9-2
Changing to SMS 17-12
Changing to S! mail 17-12
Changing voice recorder settings 14-17
Charger Port 1-7
Charging 1-14, 1-16
Checking memory usage 15-8, 18-2
Clear memory 13-10
Clock Display 8-4
Conference Call 16-9
Connecting a Bluetooth®-compatible device 12-6, 12-9
Connection to another Bluetooth devices 12-6
Content key info 11-14
Converting currency or unit 14-19
Cookie setting 23-2
Copy text 22-13
Copying characters 4-13
Copying files 11-16
Copying folders 11-16
Copying items 5-14
Copying Phonebook 5-15
Copyrighted file icons 18-5
Country code 15-3
Creating a folder 11-15, 18-15
Creating a play list 10-6
Creating messages 17-6
Current contacts 2-9
Cutting characters 4-13

D

Data folder 7-15, 11-2
Date and time setting 1-18
Default name 14-17
Default style 20-4
Deleting a bookmark 22-11
Deleting a file 11-17
Deleting a folder 11-17, 18-16
Deleting a Saved page 22-9
Deleting a S! Appli 24-5
Deleting access logs 22-11
Deleting Cache 23-4
Deleting Calendar items 14-13
Deleting Call Log Records 2-10
Deleting characters 4-12
Deleting Cookies 23-4
Deleting messages 18-9
Deleting messages in server 19-3
Deleting My devices 12-5
Deleting Phonebook 5-15
Deleting still images 7-6
Deleting templates 4-17, 18-9, 18-11
Dialed Call Log Records 2-9
Dialing display 8-8
Dictionary 14-22
Display 1-8
Display brightness 8-7
Display mode 14-7
Display Operator name 8-5
Display rendering 22-12
Display size of videos 10-12
Displaying Slide show 17-12
Download Content Key 11-14

Downloading a S! Appli 24-2
Drafts 18-2
DTMF 2-8, 6-5
Dynamic effect list 7-19

E

Earphone call 15-3
Editing bookmarks 22-10
Editing Calendar details 14-12
Editing Phonebook 5-14
Editing still images 7-15
Editing Style 17-13
Editing the title for a Saved page 22-8
Editing Videos 7-17
Effect sound and keypad tone volume 9-2
Effect sound setting 9-3, 9-7
Effects 7-12
Encode 22-15
Entering a number to select an item 1-21
Entering by quoting text 4-11
Entering characters 4-2, 4-5
Entering emoticons 4-10
Entering pictograms 4-10
Entering symbols 4-10
Entering URL 21-3
Entry mode for characters 4-2
Event list 14-12
External Device Port 1-7

F

File details 11-14
File Viewer 11-5
Font size 4-15, 8-6, 8-9, 23-3
Forwarding 18-8
Forwarding Messages 19-4
Forwarding messages in server ..19-4
Frames 7-6, 7-16

G

Greeting Messages 8-9

H

Holiday 14-9
Home zone 1-20

I

Icons for attached files 17-16
Icons for files 11-2, 11-4
Icons on Drafts list 18-4
Icons on My devices list 12-6
Icons on Received messages list 18-4
Icons on Sent messages 18-5
Icons on Unsent messages list 18-5
Image display 23-2
In-car charger 1-16
Initiating a call 2-2, 2-14
Initiating a call overseas 2-14
Initiating a Video Call 6-2
Initiating an international call 2-2, 2-14
Inserting/Removing USIM Card .1-3
Installing and removing battery .1-12

International code 15-2
International roaming 2-13
Interpreter 14-23
Invoking a function with Switch Bar 1-22
Invoking functions from Main menu 1-20
Items to save to Phonebook 5-2

J

Java Script 23-3
Jump 4-14

K

Key assignments 4-3
Keypad tone 9-3

L

Language 8-10
List Font Size 8-6
Locking/unlocking 11-14
Locking/unlocking files 11-14
Locking/Unlocking sound files ..14-17
Locking/Unlocking S! Appli 24-4

M

Mail art function 17-7
Mail Server 19-2
Mailbox 18-2
Main menu style 8-5
Manner profile 3-2
Mark default number 5-14
Maximum of message size 20-4
Media Player 10-2
Memo 14-10
Message 17-2
Message details 18-3
Message List 19-2
Message type icon 18-3
Missed Call 2-4, 2-9
Mobile Postcard 7-7
Mobile tracker 13-7
Modifying characters 4-12
Move to USIM 18-20
mPet 24-5
mPostcard 7-6
Multi Selector xiv
Mute 2-3, 2-8, 9-4
My devices 12-4, 12-8, 12-9
My phone's name 12-11
My phone's visibility 12-10
My phone's visibility for Bluetooth® 12-10

N

Network mode 2-13
Network password 1-24, 16-13
Network Profile 2-13
Network selection 2-13
Network S! Appli 24-2

O

Offline Profile 3-2
Opening Saved page 22-8
Operating messages in server 19-2
Operations available during a Video Call 6-3
Operations during a call 2-8

Option menu 1-23
Outgoing/incoming call barring service 16-11
Owner information 5-16

P

Page Details 22-14
Page Window 21-4
Password Lock 13-5
Pasting characters 4-13
Phone lock 13-5
Phonebook search 5-9
Photo slide 8-2
PIN 1-5
PIN authentication at power on 1-5, 13-3
PIN lock 13-3
PIN2 1-5
PIN2 lock unlocking code 13-3
Player settings 10-7, 10-11
Playing melody 10-3
Playing video 7-15, 10-9
Playing voice 14-16
Popup menu 8-6
Power ON/OFF 1-17, 1-18
Predictive entry function ON/OFF 4-14
Preferences 23-2
Preferred network 2-14
Pre-installed 11-2
Print via Bluetooth® 12-7
Privacy Lock 13-6
Providing Manufacturer Number 23-3
PUK Code 1-5, 13-3
Putting a call on hold 2-7

Q

Quoting for entries 4-11

R

Received call log 2-9
Received messages 18-2
Receiving a call 2-3
Receiving a Video Call 6-2
Receiving all messages 19-2
Receiving data via Bluetooth® 12-7
Receiving message in server 19-2
Receiving settings 20-3
Record settings 14-17
Recording voice 14-16
Registering an S! Mail Template 18-19
Registering as S! Mail Template 18-6
Registering SMS templates 4-16
Registering to bookmark 22-9
Registering to Phonebook 5-4
Rejecting call reception 15-6
Rejecting incoming calls 13-8
Renaming a still image file 7-6
Renaming My devices 12-5
Renaming sound files 14-17
Repeat mode 10-7, 10-11
Reply 17-5, 18-7
Reply with text 20-6
Reset 13-11
Reset all 13-11
Reset settings 13-11

Resetting a call cost 2-11
Resetting Call times 2-11
Resetting PIN lock 13-3
Resetting S! Appli settings 24-14
Restarting paused S! Appli 24-4
Retry function 17-2
Retry with 6-6
Ringtone for a Voice Call 5-8

S

Saving a page 22-8
Saving as a template 17-20
Saving attached files 18-14
Saving images 22-2
Saving sounds 22-5
Saving to Drafts 17-20
Schedule 14-7
Search text 22-13
Search type 5-12
Secure mode for data transfer 12-11
Security 24-12
Security Codes 1-23
Selecting 3G or GSM 2-13
Sending a bookmark URL 22-10
Sending a message from Drafts 18-8
Sending data via Bluetooth® 12-6
Sending from Unsent Messages 18-9
Sending settings 17-12, 20-2, 20-5
Sending sound files 14-16
Sending still images via Bluetooth® 12-6
Sending URL 22-14
Sending videos via Bluetooth® 7-12, 12-6
Sending your image 6-5
Sent messages 18-2
Server Certification 22-14
Server Mail Size 19-2
Shortcut operations 7-10
Shortcuts 1-22, 15-7
Side Key 15-6
Side Key Lock 15-6
Simple Search Setting 15-7
Skin 10-8
Slide show 11-3
SMS 17-2, 20-5
SMS templates 4-11
Softkey xiii
Software Update 25-10
Sort 11-9, 14-13, 18-17
Sorting files 11-9
Sound file details 14-17
Sound file setting 14-16
Sound playback 23-2
Sound Settings 9-4
Speaker Phone call 2-7
Speed dialing 5-12
SSL/TLS 21-2
SSL/TLS certificate 23-4
Still image details 7-6
Stopping or Pausing S! Appli 24-3
Stopwatch 14-22
Streaming 22-7
Sub LCD Light 8-8
Substitute images 6-6
SVG-T/Flash® Viewer 11-8
Switching callers 16-10
S! Appli 24-2
S! Appli detailed information 24-4

S! Mail 17-2
S! Mail templates 17-14

T

Task 14-10
Templates 4-11, 18-2
Timer 7-11

U

Unsent messages 18-2
Updating information 22-13
Updating mail list 19-2
USB connection 12-11
User dictionary 4-15
USIM Card 1-2
USIM lock 13-4
USIM password 13-5
Using a file 11-10
Using a template 17-14
Using SMS templates 4-16

V

Various settings for Video Call 6-5
vFile 11-12
Vibration 14-2, 24-14
Vibrator/Sound settings 9-2
Video Mode 7-10
Video settings 7-14
Viewfinder 7-3
Viewing a file 11-3
Viewing attached files 18-13
Viewing Call cost 2-11
Viewing Call Log Records 2-9
Viewing Call times 2-11
Viewing Saved Calendar Entries 14-12
Viewing your phone number (My Phonebook details) 5-16
Visualization 10-8
Voice Mail Service 16-5
Voice Recorder 14-15
Volume 2-7, 9-2, 24-13

W

Wake-up Alarm 14-2
Wallpaper 8-2
Web 21-2
Web access from a bookmark 22-10
Web connection from access logs 22-11
World clock 14-18

Y

Yahoo! Keitai 22-16

Z

Zoom list 8-7

Numerics

3D Pictogram 20-5

Warranty & After Sales Service

Warranty

The purchased 708SC comes with a Warranty.

- Check the shop and date of purchase.
- Read through the contents of the Warranty and keep it in a safe place.
- The warranty period can be found in the Warranty.

SoftBank is not liable for damages to you or a third party from missed calls, etc. due to handset failure or malfunction, etc.

Repair Requests

Before submitting 708SC for repair, consult the "Troubleshooting" section.

for a solution. If a problem persists, contact Customer Service (P.25-25) or the nearest SoftBank shop; be prepared to describe problem in detail.

- During the warranty period, repairs will be made under the terms and conditions described in the warranty.
- After the warranty period, repairs will be upon request; if said repairs can be made, you will be charged for them.

Note

- **708SC files and settings may be lost or altered due to accidents or repairs. Keep a copy of important files, etc. like Phonebook entries. SoftBank is not liable for damages resulting from accidental loss or alteration of 708SC files (Phonebook, Data Folder, etc.) or settings.**
- **Disassembling or modifying this product may be a violation of the Radio Law. Note that SoftBank will not accept repair requests for disassembled or modified products.**

Customer Service

If you have questions about SoftBank handsets or services, please call General Information.

For repairs, please call Customer Assistance.

SoftBank Customer Center
From a SoftBank handset, dial toll free at 157 for General Information or 113 for Customer Assistance

SoftBank International Call Center
From outside Japan, dial **+81-3-5351-3491** (Please take care to dial correctly; international charges will apply.)

Call these numbers toll free from landlines.

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Hokkaido, Aomori, Akita, Iwate, Yamagata, Miyagi, Fukushima, Niigata, Tokyo, Kanagawa, Chiba, Saitama, Ibaraki, Tochigi, Gunma, Yamanashi, Nagano, Toyama, Ishikawa, Fukui	General Information	0088-240-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	0088-240-113 (Toll-free)
Aichi, Gifu, Mie, Shizuoka	General Information	0088-241-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	0088-241-113 (Toll-free)

Subscription Areas	Contact	
Osaka, Hyogo, Kyoto, Nara, Shiga, Wakayama	General Information	0088-242-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	0088-242-113 (Toll-free)
Hiroshima, Okayama, Yamaguchi, Tottori, Shimane, Tokushima, Kagawa, Ehime, Kochi, Fukuoka, Saga, Nagasaki, Oita, Kumamoto, Miyazaki, Kagoshima, Okinawa	General Information	0088-250-157 (Toll-free)
	Customer Assistance	0088-250-113 (Toll-free)

SoftBank 708SC User

October 2006 Version 1

SOFTBANK MOBILE

To help protect the environment and recycle valuable resources, mobile phone, and PHS shops displaying the above mark accept mobile phones, batteries, and chargers of all manufacturers.

*Mobile phones, batteries, and chargers collected for recycling cannot be returned.

*To protect your privacy, delete any personal information (telephone

*For more information, please visit your nearest SoftBank

Model name : SoftBank 708SC

Manufacturer :Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd.